

System Requirements

Table of Contents

CommServe

- Enterprise Version
- Express Version

Media Agents

CommCell Console

- CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application
- CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application

CommCell Explorer

Backup & Recovery Agents

- Active Directory *iDataAgent*
- DB2 *iDataAgent*
- DB2 DBF *iDataAgent*
- Image Level *iDataAgent*
- Image Level ProxyHost *iDataAgent*
- Informix *iDataAgent*
- Lotus Notes/Domino Server *iDataAgents*
- Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft Exchange Server *iDataAgents*
- Microsoft SharePoint Server *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft SQL Server *iDataAgent*
- Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*
- MySQL *iDataAgent*
- NAS NDMP *iDataAgent*
- NetWare Server *iDataAgents*
- Novell GroupWise *iDataAgent*
- OES File System *iDataAgent*
- Oracle *iDataAgent*
- Oracle RAC *iDataAgent*
- ProxyHost *iDataAgent*
- SAP for MAXDB *iDataAgent*
- SAP for Oracle *iDataAgent*
- Sybase *iDataAgent*
- Unix File System *iDataAgent*
- Virtual Server *iDataAgent*

Workstation Backup Agent

- Workstation Backup Agent - Source
- Workstation Backup Agent - Destination

1-Touch

- 1-Touch for Windows

- 1-Touch for Unix

Quick Recovery Agents

- Quick Recovery Agent
- Recovery Director
- QSnap

Archive Management Agents

- Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent
- Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent
- Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent
- File Archiver for NetWare Agent
- File Archiver for Unix Agent
- File Archiver for Windows Agent
- SharePoint Archiver Agent
- Data Classification Enabler
- Content Indexing and Search
- Content Indexing Engine

Online Content Indexing

- Online Content Indexing for File System Agent
- Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent

Search and Browse

- Web Search Server
- Web Search Client

ContinuousDataReplicator

SRM

- SRM Server
- SRM Exchange Agent
- SRM NetWare Proxy Agent
- SRM NAS Agent
- SRM Oracle Agent
- SRM SharePoint Agent
- SRM SQL Agent
- SRM UNIX File System Agent
- SRM Virtual Server Agent
- SRM Windows File System Agent

CommNet

- CommNet Server
- CommNet Browser
- CommNet Explorer

Others

Media Explorer

Books Online

Product Obsolescence Policy

System Requirements - CommServe

[Enterprise Version](#) | [Express Version](#)

The following requirements are for the Enterprise version of the CommServe:

Operating System

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

*Web Server Editions not supported

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core and Web Server Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

Dual 1 GHz minimum required

CommServe Database Engine

- Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Enterprise Edition (with Service Pack 2) will be automatically installed while installing the software. Later versions of the Service Pack, if available, are also supported. (* See Disclaimer below.)
 - The Enterprise version of the CommServe is not supported on Microsoft Windows Small Business Server platforms. If you wish to install the CommServe on Microsoft Windows Small Business Server platform, you must install the Express version of the CommServe. See the System Requirements for the [Express version](#) of the CommServe for more information.
 - In a clustered environment, Microsoft SQL Server 2005 (Enterprise Edition) with the appropriate service pack must be installed and clustered prior to installing the CommServe software. The CommServe software automatically uses the default or the named instance created during the SQL installation.
 - Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.
-

Memory

2 GB RAM minimum required; 4GB RAM recommended

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

Hard Disk

2.1 GB of local disk space for the CommServe software, including database and log file growth, and the Microsoft SQL Server application and database. (The SQL software is embedded in the CommServe software installation.)

2.2 GB of temp space on the drive on which the Operating System and `temp` directory resides. (This space is used for temporary files copied during the installation or upgrade of the Microsoft SQL Server and CommServe software).

1.5 GB of permanently available disk space on a local or mapped network drive for CommServe Disaster Recovery. (CommServe Disaster Recovery is a feature that secures the CommServe's metadata.)

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the CommServe metadata. The size of the metadata depends on the number of computers in the CommCell and the quantity of data stored.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) version 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

For all Microsoft Windows 2003 platforms, Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) is automatically installed with the operating system.

The software can function with JRE version 1.6.x or higher.

If a JRE version 1.6.0_06 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If JRE version 1.6.0_05 or lower is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.6.0_06

You can run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application without installing the software provided IIS is installed and running on the CommServe computer (or CommCell Console and IIS are running on an alternate computer). However, you must manually install JRE in this case. When running the applet Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.6.0_06 is recommended - can be installed from the software installation disc.

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The CommServe requires IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4). See [Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Microsoft Internet Information Service (IIS) Web Server version 4.0, 5.0 and 6.0

IIS is required in the CommServe computer (or an alternate computer configured for web administration) to access the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application

See [Web Administration](#) for more information on configuring web administration.

Notes on CommServe Installation

The CommServe is a resource intensive application and should be installed on a dedicated server. Therefore, it is recommended that the CommServe not be installed on a computer running other applications, such as Microsoft Exchange Server, an Oracle database, etc. Additionally, CommServes installed on virtual machines generally perform at about 60% capacity compared to physical machines with similar configurations.

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Microsoft SQL Server application that is installed on the computer must be dedicated to support the software and cannot be shared by other applications.

The computer on which the software is installed must have a static IP address. The software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

The database instance used by the software requires specific SQL server settings. Verify the following settings by viewing the SQL properties using the SQL Management Studio and by running the SQL Server system stored procedure, which is `sp_helpsort`.

- In the `Memory` tab, the dynamically configured `Maximum` memory should be 50% of the physical memory available in the computer on which the software is installed
- `Character Set` is `1252/ISO` (default)
- `Sort Order` is `Dictionary order, case Insensitive`
- `Unicode Collation` includes `General Unicode, case Insensitive, width Insensitive`
- Verify the following from the `Data Files` tab of the `tempdb Properties` dialog box:
 - The `tempdb` SQL database has at least 100 MB of disk space
 - The `Automatically grow file` option is selected
 - The `file growth` is set to 20%
- For `Service Accounts`, use the same `Local System` account for each service and enable auto-start for SQL services.

For clustered environments, use an account with administrator privileges (i.e., a member of the `Administrator` local group of the computer or domain).

If installing the CommServe on a VMware virtual machine, consider the following recommendations for optimal performance:

- The ESX Server hosting the virtual machine should be vSphere (4.0) or above.
- The virtual machine on which the CommServe will be installed should have:
 - Minimum 2 64-bit vCPUs
 - Minimum 4GB RAM
 - A Windows Server 2008 x64 Edition operating system
 - All VMware tools and utilities installed
- Minimum bandwidth of 1 Gbps for data transfer.
- The CommServe's SQL database should be configured on shared storage (such as a SAN or FAST disk).

Notes on Combined Installations

You will often install more than one module (For example, CommServe, MediaAgent, Client) on a single computer so that it can perform two or more functions. For example, you may want to back up the file system of a MediaAgent; hence, you would install both the MediaAgent and client software on that computer.

When you combine two or more functions on a single computer, the storage resources required to support the software for that computer are not essentially cumulative. This is because modules share some of the same software. As a result, combined installations require about 30 MB less disk space than installations where the software resides on separate computers.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

System Requirements

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - CommServe

Enterprise Version | Express Version

The following requirements are for the Express version of the CommServe:

Item	Description
Computer/Processor	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended.
Memory	<p>512 MB RAM minimum required</p> <p>Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory.</p>
Hard Disk	2.5 GB of log disk space for installing the software and future data growth.
Operating System	<p>Windows XP</p> <p>Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition</p> <p>Windows Server 2003</p> <p>Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service pack 1</p> <p>Windows Server 2008</p> <p>Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*</p> <p>* Core Editions not supported.</p> <p>* Contact your software provider prior to installing the software on Windows 2008 Web Server.</p>
Peripherals	<p>DVD-ROM drive</p> <p>Network Interface Card (with TCP/IP Services Configured)</p>
Display	Any mode other than VGA
Miscellaneous	<p>Microsoft® SQL Server 2005 Desktop Engine (MSDE 2005) with Service Pack 2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SQL Server 2005 database instance with the appropriate service pack will be automatically installed during the installation. <p>Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For all Microsoft Windows 2003 platforms, Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) is automatically installed with the operating system. <p>The software can function with JRE version 1.6.x or higher.</p> <p>If a JRE version 1.6.0_06 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.</p> <p>If JRE version 1.6.0_05 or lower is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.6.0_06</p> <p>You can run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application without installing the software provided IIS is installed and running on the CommServe computer (or CommCell Console and IIS are running on an alternate computer). However, you must manually install JRE in this case. When running the applet Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.6.0_06 is recommended - can be installed from the software installation disc.</p>



Notes on CommServe Installation

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The computer must have a static IP address. This version of the software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - MediaAgent

The following requirements are for the MediaAgent:

Operating System		Processor
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit with maintenance level 7 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher FIELD CERTIFIED	RS/6000 43P Model 150 – 375 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	AIX 5.2 64-bit with maintenance level 7 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher FIELD CERTIFIED	
	AIX 5.2 32-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 5.2 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 32-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	HP-UX -PA RISC 300 MHZ or higher; Dual Processors recommended
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31) 64-bit	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31) 64-bit	
Linux	CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	CentOS 4.6 with glibc 2.3.x	
	CentOS 5 with glibc 2.5.x FIELD CERTIFIED	
	CentOS 4.6 with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	CentOS 5 with glibc 2.5.x FIELD CERTIFIED	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Flag Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
	Red Flag Linux AS 4.1 32-bit with glibc 2.3.x	
		Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES	processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium
Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Red Hat Linux ES 4.0 with glibc-2.3.x FIELD CERTIFIED	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
Red Hat Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Itanium
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 5 with glibc 2.5.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
SuSE Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible 650 MHz processor minimum recommended; Dual 1 GHz or higher processors recommended
SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x	
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.9.x	
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Itanium
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.9.x	
SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x	x64
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	
SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.9.x	
SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc	

2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc
2.9.x**NetWare**

NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum
required

The NetWare MediaAgent / iDataAgents are installed on a NetWare server using a Novell client computer, with Novell Client 4.9 on one of the following operating systems:

Microsoft Windows XP Professional

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions up with a minimum of Service Pack 2

SolarisSolaris 8 32-bit with Service Packs 108434-09,
108435-09, and 109147-20Sun Ultra5 station or higher; Dual
Processors recommendedSolaris 8 64-bit with Service Packs 108434-09,
108435-09, and 109147-20

Solaris 9 4/04 32-bit

Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit

Solaris 10 64-bit

Solaris 10 64-bit

x64

Tru64

Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3

Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series
computer or higher recommended**Windows Windows Server 2003**Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and
x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1All Windows-compatible processors
supportedMicrosoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions**
with a minimum of Service Pack 1 (as guest
OS/virtual machine) on VMware GSX and ESX**Windows Server 2008**Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64
Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Web Server Editions not supported

**On VMware virtual machines, Hyper-V virtual
machines, and Hyper-V R2 Core machines,
[Magnetic Library](#) configuration is supported.**Cluster Support**See [Clustering - Support](#)**Memory**4 GB RAM minimum required; 8 GB RAM recommended if MediaAgent with x64 is used with
Deduplication

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

Hard Disk

Windows

130 MB for the MediaAgent software and log file growth/ 298 MB recommended

Enough additional local disk space to accommodate the index cache (with a minimum of 256 MB). It is recommended that the index cache is configured to be written on a partitioned drive, used exclusively for holding index cache. For information on calculating the space requirements for index cache, see [Calculating the Storage Space Required for Index Cache](#).

85 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

An undersized index cache can result in degraded backup and restore performance. A severely undersized index cache can render backups and restores on that MediaAgent inoperable.

MediaAgent installation and upgrade require additional 200 MB of free disk space on the drive in which the Operating System and `temp` directory resides, to copy temporary files during the install or upgrade process.

Unix

250 MB for the MediaAgent software and log file growth

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card. For NetWare MediaAgents, if NetWare AHA 2944 card is used, driver version 8.30.13 (or later) must be installed for this card.

SCSI bus adapter for each attached media library

Sufficient hard disk space when backing up to magnetic drives.

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Media library or stand-alone drive attached to local SCSI adapter(s), backup device available through Storage Area Network (SAN), or magnetic disk partitions for backup data.

Contact your software provider, for a list of supported storage devices (libraries, drives, media and SAN devices) and compatible SCSI cards.

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

For NetWare MediaAgents, IP protocol enabled and binded to the specific Network Interface Card (NIC).

Drivers for SCSI Adapters (Supplied by your SCSI Adapter provider)

Drivers for media drives (Supplied by your media drive provider)

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
-----------	---------------------

<p><directory>/<file_name>.te</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation</pre>

```
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on MediaAgent Installation

The MediaAgent should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Netware File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the Netware MediaAgent, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - NetWare Server iDataAgents](#).

For information on installing the MediaAgent software on the Microsoft Virtual Server, see [Considerations for backing up the Microsoft Virtual Server](#).

Notes on Combined Installations

You will often install more than one module (For example, CommServe, MediaAgent, Client) on a single computer so that it can perform two or more functions. For example, you may want to back up the file system of a MediaAgent; hence, you would install both the MediaAgent and client software on that computer.

When you combine two or more functions on a single computer, the storage resources required to support the software for that computer are not essentially cumulative. This is because modules share some of the same software. As a result, combined installations require about 30 MB less disk space than installations where the software resides on separate computers.

(If CommServe, MediaAgent and Client software are installed on the same computer.)

Contact your software provider, for a list of supported storage devices (libraries, drives, media and SAN devices) and compatible SCSI cards.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our

System Requirements

software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application

Stand-Alone Application | [Remote Web-Based Application](#)

The following requirements are for the CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application:

Operating System		Processor
Windows	Windows Server 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Windows XP Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions	
	Windows Vista Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	
	Windows Server 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions* <small>*Core Editions not supported</small>	
	Windows 7 Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions	
	CentOS CentOS 4.6 with glibc 2.3.x CentOS 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	CentOS 4.6 with glibc 2.3.x CentOS 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Debian Debian 5.x with glibc 2.7.x	
	Fedora Fedora release 8 with glibc 2.7.x Fedora release 8 with glibc 2.7.x	
	Red Flag Linux Red Flag Linux AS 4.1 32-bit with glibc 2.3.x Red Flag Linux AS 5.0 64-bit with glibc 2.3.x	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Linux 9.0 32-bit distributions and versions with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 3.0 with glibc 2.3.x
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with glibc 2.3.x

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x

Intel Itanium

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x

x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 5.1 with glibc 2.5.x

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 (i586) Edition with glibc 2.3.x

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 9.0 Professional Edition with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 9.1 Professional with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 9.2 Professional with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 9.3 Professional Edition with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x

Intel Itanium

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.3.x

x64

SuSE Linux 9.2 Professional Edition with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 9.3 Professional Edition with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 9 with glibc-2.3.x

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

SuSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 with glibc-2.4.x

	Ubuntu	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Ubuntu 8.04	
Mac OS X	Ubuntu 8.04	x64
	Mac OS X v10.4.0	Apple Macintosh computer with a PowerPC G4 or G5 processor that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X v10.4.1	
	Mac OS X v10.4.2	
	Mac OS X v10.4.3	
	Mac OS X v10.4.4	
	Mac OS X v10.4.5	
	Mac OS X v10.4.6	
	Mac OS X v10.4.7	
	Mac OS X v10.4.8	
Mac OS X Server	Mac OS X Server v10.4.0	Apple Macintosh computer with a PowerPC G4 or G5 processor that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.1	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.2	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.3	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.4	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.5	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.6	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.7	
	Mac OS X Server v10.4.8	

Display

The graphical icons in the CommCell Console cannot be displayed in VGA mode. This affects the appearance of the console's toolbar and the CommCell tree in the CommCell Browser. Also, some table of contents are not displayed correctly.

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required (Beyond the requirements of the operating system and the console computer)

Hard Disk

65 MB free disk space

108 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The CommCell Console supports Internet Protocol versions 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6). See [Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008

Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on CommCell Console Installation

JRE

The software can function with JRE version 1.6.x or higher.

If a JRE version 1.6.0_06 or higher is available, the software will use the existing JRE software.

If JRE version 1.6.0_05 or lower is available, or no JRE version is available at all, you will be prompted to install JRE version 1.6.0_06

You can run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application without installing the software provided IIS is installed and running on the CommServe computer (or CommCell Console and IIS are running on an alternate computer). However, you must manually install JRE in this case. When running the applet Java™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.6.0_06 is recommended - can be installed from the software installation disc.

To run the CommCell Console as a Stand-Alone Application on a Macintosh computer, JRE version 1.5 is required.

The following has been observed during the installation of JRE Runtime Environment using the Microsoft

Certification Tool.

Some files have no file-type association, description, or icon; they may have a generic icon or are not registered. The following displays those extensions that were Added or Changed but Improperly Registered:

- .ans - Not Registered - No Filetype - No Icon - No Command
- .jar - Registered - jarfile - No Icon - "C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.6.0\bin\javaw.exe" -jar "%1" %*
- .jnlp - Registered - JNLPFile - No Icon - "C:\Program Files\Java\jre1.6.0\bin\javaws.exe" "%1"

No action is required.

IIS

IIS must be installed on the CommServe computer to remotely access the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application.

If an alternate computer is used as the IIS server, the alternate computer must:

- be in the same domain as the CommServe.
- have the CommCell Console installed.

See [Web Administration](#) for more information.

If the CommCell Console software is going to be installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0 and 7.5, the following software components must be installed and configured along with all default components on the computer prior to the CommCell Console installation:

- ASP
- CGI
- ISAPI Extensions
- IIS 6 Management Capability

Note that on Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 computers, these components will be automatically installed if not already installed on the computer.

If the CommCell Console software is already installed on a computer running IIS version 7.0, the `InstallGalaxyWeb` utility must be executed on the computer. See [Tools and Utilities](#) for more information on this utility.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application

[Stand-Alone Application](#) | [Remote Web-Based Application](#)

The following requirements are for the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application:

Supported Web Browsers

Linux

Mozilla 1.x

Netscape 6.2

Macintosh

Mozilla Firefox v2.0.0.3

Safari v2.0.4

Solaris

Netscape 6.2

Windows

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 5.01, 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

Mozilla Firefox v2.0.0.3

Operating System

The CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application is supported on any operating system running a supported Java-enabled web browser.

Miscellaneous

The CommCell Console supports Internet Protocol versions 4 and 6 (IPv4 and IPv6). See [Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

IIS must be installed on the CommServe computer to remotely access the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application.

If an alternate computer is used as the IIS server, the alternate computer must:

- be in the same domain as the CommServe.
- have the CommCell Console installed.

See [Web Administration](#) for more information.

JAVA™ Runtime Environment (JRE) SE v1.6.0_06 recommended.

- The software can function with JRE version 1.5.0_03 or higher.

If any of the above versions are not available, the Browser will automatically download the latest version from the appropriate Sun website.

- Java plug-in is not supported on Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 editions. To run CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application, you need to install 32-bit JRE on 64-bit machines.

- To run the CommCell Console as a Remote Web-Based Application on a Macintosh computer, JRE version 1.5 is required.
-

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - CommCell Explorer

The following requirements are for the CommCell Explorer:

Operating System

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

See [System Requirements - CommServe](#)

Hard Disk

253 MB of disk space for the CommCell Explorer software/ 1013 MB recommended

159 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

See [System Requirements - CommServe](#)

Miscellaneous

The CommCell Explorer software must be installed on a functional CommServe.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Active Directory iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Active Directory iDataAgent:

Operating System

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

It is recommended that your Active Directory server has DNS services configured.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Active Directory iDataAgent, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File Systems](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - DB2 iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the DB2 iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
DB2 8.1 Universal Database 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
DB2 8.1 Universal Database 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with a minimum of technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Windows Server 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
DB2 8.2 Universal Database 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and
runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

AIX 6.1

HP-UX	HP-UX 11.11	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11.11	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9	
	Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Windows Server 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	

DB2 8.2 Universal Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11.31	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11.31	PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9	
	Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported

DB2 9.1 Universal Database 32-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11.11 HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11.11 HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* *Core and R2 Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
DB2 9.1 Universal Database 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11.31 HP-UX 11.31	Intel Itanium PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64

	SuSE Linux	x64
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
*Core and R2 Editions not supported		
DB2 9.5 Universal Database 32-bit on:		
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
*Core and R2 Editions not supported		
DB2 9.5 Universal Database 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11.31	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x
 SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x
 SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64

Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	
	*Core Editions not supported	

DB2 9.7 Universal Database 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	

Windows	Windows 2008	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
	*Core and R2 Editions not supported	

DB2 9.7 Universal Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11.31	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	

Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
<hr/>		
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	
	*Core Editions not supported	

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, HP-UX, Linux and Solaris

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

Windows

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

365 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the DB2 iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#)

- [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#)

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) #####</pre> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - DB2 DPF iDataAgents

The following requirements are for the DB2 DPF iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
DB2 9.1 Universal Database 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* *Core and R2 Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
DB2 9.1 Universal Database 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	SuSE Linux	x64

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x
 SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x
 SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64

Windows	Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
*Core and R2 Editions not supported		

DB2 9.5 Universal Database 32-bit on:

Linux	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Itanium
--------------	--	---------------

Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
*Core and R2 Editions not supported		

DB2 9.5 Universal Database 64-bit on:

Linux	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Itanium
--------------	--	---------------

Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64

Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
*Core Editions not supported		

DB2 9.7 Universal Database 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Itanium
Windows	Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* <small>*Core and R2 Editions not supported</small>	All Windows-compatible processors supported

DB2 9.7 Universal Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11.31	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Itanium
Solaris	Solaris 10.x	x64
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions <small>*Core Editions not supported</small>	All Windows-compatible processors supported

MemorySee [System Requirements - DB2 iDataAgent](#)**Hard Disk**See [System Requirements - DB2 iDataAgent](#)**Peripherals**

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) #####</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Image Level iDataAgent

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the Image Level *iDataAgent*:

If using this Agent with a snapshot engine, refer to [System Requirements-Image Level iDataAgent - Snapshots Support](#) information on the operating system vendors supported for each snapshot engine with this Agent.

Operating System		Processor
AIX	<p>AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher</p> <p>AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher</p> <p>AIX 6.1 64-bit</p>	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	<p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-15 (Update 2)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-47 (Update 8)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-47 (Update 8)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-</p>	<p>Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required</p> <p>x64</p>

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.191 (Patch Level 2)

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.21-0.8

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)

x64

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

Solaris

Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09 Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02

Solaris 10

Windows Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional Edition 32-bit with Service Pack 2

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, Linux, and Solaris

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

Windows

115 MB minimum of hard drive space for software/ 499 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

82 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

235 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Image Level iDataAgent, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent,

refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#)
- [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#)

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation</code>

```
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Image Level ProxyHost iDataAgent

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the Image Level ProxyHost iDataAgent:

If using this Agent with a snapshot engine, refer to [System Requirements-Image Level ProxyHost iDataAgent - Snapshots Support](#) information on the operating system vendors supported for each snapshot engine with this Agent.

Operating System		Processor
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	<p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-15 (Update 2)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-47 (Update 8)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)</p> <p>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)</p> <p>SuSE Linux</p> <p>SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.191 (Patch Level 2)</p> <p>SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)</p> <p>SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)</p> <p>SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.21-0.8</p> <p>SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel</p>	

2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

Solaris

Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09 Sun Sparc5 or higher

Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02

Solaris 10

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Linux and Solaris

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

Linux and Solaris

240 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

116 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 549 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

83 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM Drive

Network Interface Card

Fibre Channel card (HBA) if the data to be protected resides on SAN-attached volumes

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the Image Level ProxyHost *iDataAgent*, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*](#).

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --</code>

```

gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Informix *iDataAgent*

The following requirements are for the Informix *iDataAgent*:

Application/Operating System		Processor
Informix 9.4.x UCx on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Informix 9.4.x FCx on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11)	PA-RISC
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09, Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Informix 10 HCx on:		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Informix 10 UCx on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 9

Solaris 10.x

Informix 10 FCx on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
------------	--	----------------------------------

AIX 6.1

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
--------------	---	---------

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Intel Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	x64
--------------	--	-----

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

x64

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
----------------	---	----------------------------------

Solaris 9

Solaris 10.x

Informix 11 HCx on:

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
--------------	---	---------

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Informix 11 UCx on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
------------	--	----------------------------------

AIX 6.1

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
--------------	----------------------	---------

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Informix 11 FCx on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xlc.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Informix 11.5 HCx on:		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Informix 11.5 UCx on:		

AIX	AIX 5.3 32-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Informix 11.5 FCx on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x *For INFORMIX IDS 11.5, the FC(4) or higher version is the prerequisite.	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the Informix *iDataAgent* if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - Unix File System *iDataAgent*](#).

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level software` option selected.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Lotus Notes/Domino Server Database iDataAgent

Lotus Notes Database iDataAgent | [Lotus Notes Document iDataAgent](#)

The Lotus Notes/Domino Server iDataAgents support the following Lotus Domino Server releases in both Domino Cluster and non-Domino Cluster environments.

If you are running a Lotus Domino Server in a Domino Cluster, special restore considerations apply. See [Restore Considerations for this Agent](#) in [Restore Data - Lotus Notes/Domino Server](#) for more information.

Application/Operating System		Processor
Lotus Domino Server Release 6.5.x 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Lotus Domino Server Release 7.0.x 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended x64

Solaris 10.x

Windows Windows 2003

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.**Lotus Domino Server Release 8.0.x 32-bit on:****AIX**

AIX 5.3 with technology level 7(or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

AIX 6.1

Linux**Red Hat Enterprise Linux**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

Solaris

Solaris 10.x

Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Windows Windows 2003

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.**Lotus Domino Server Release 8.0.x 64-bit on:****AIX**

AIX 5.3 with technology level 7(or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

Windows

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Lotus Domino Server Release 8.5.x 32-bit on:**AIX**

AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

Linux**Red Hat Enterprise Linux**

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible

		processors
<hr/>		
SuSE Linux		
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
<hr/>		
Solaris	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
<hr/>		
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	
	* Special configuration considerations apply. See Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform for more information.	
<hr/>		
Lotus Domino Server Release 8.5.x 64-bit on:		
<hr/>		
AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
<hr/>		
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	

Memory

AIX

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications*

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications*

*Very Large Memory Module (VLMM) supported.

Hard Disk

AIX

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

114MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

81 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Lotus Notes/Domino Server iDataAgents if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to:

[System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#)

[System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#)

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation</code>

use the same name for policy module and the file.

For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc

```
directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on Lotus Notes Client Add-In Installations

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*

The following requirements are for the Macintosh File System *iDataAgent*:

Operating System

Mac OS X/Mac OS X Server

Mac OS X v10.2.x

Mac OS X v10.3.x

Mac OS X v10.4.x

Mac OS X v10.5.x

Mac OS X v10.4.x

Mac OS X v10.5.x

Mac OS X v10.6.x

Processor

Apple Macintosh computer with a PowerPC G4 or G5 processor that supports any of the operating systems identified in this table

Intel-based Macintosh computers

Memory

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Microsoft Data Protection Manager

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent*:

Application

The Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent* supports the following Microsoft Data Protection Manager versions:

Microsoft Data Protection Manager Server 2006 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Data Protection Manager Server 2007 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Operating System

The Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent* is supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Data Protection Manager:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

111 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

When you select the Microsoft Data Protection Manager *iDataAgent* for installation, the appropriate Windows File System *iDataAgent* and the SQL Server *iDataAgent* are automatically selected. The Windows File System *iDataAgent* is mandatory. The SQL Server *iDataAgent* is not mandatory, but it is recommended that you install it or create a new instance (if it is already installed) to protect the Data Protection Manager database.

For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*](#)

- [System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent](#)

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgents

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgents:

Application

The Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgents support the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2000 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack*

*Special configuration considerations apply. See [Considerations for Exchange Server 2010](#) for more information.

Operating System

The Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgents are supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*,**

*Core Editions not supported

**For Exchange Database iDataAgent, R2 is supported for Microsoft Exchange 2010 only

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Supported Components

Exchange Offline Mining Tool

The Exchange Offline Mining Tool is supported on any Windows Server platform.

OWA Proxy Enabler

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Outlook Add-In Client

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

Exchange Mailbox iDataAgent

116 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

82 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Exchange Database iDataAgent

114 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

81 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Exchange Public Folder iDataAgent

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Exchange Web Folder iDataAgent

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this Agent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Data Classification for Exchange Installation

Data Classification for Exchange is not supported on an Exchange 2007 CCR cluster.

Notes on Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgent Installations

- Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.
- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system

- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 requires "csvde.exe" feature to be installed on the server to query Active Directory for mailbox information
 - To install "csvde.exe" feature on Windows Server 2008 follow these steps:
 1. Open Server Manager
 2. Go to Features->Add Feature
 3. Remote Server Administration Tools
 4. Role Administration Tools
 5. Select "Active Directory Lightweight Directory Service Tools"
-

Notes on Exchange Offline Mining Tool Installation

The following additional software packages must be installed on the same computer where the Exchange Offline Mining Tool is installed, if they are not already present on the computer:

- .NET Framework 2.0 (will be automatically installed during Offline Mining Tool installation, if needed)
 - Microsoft Outlook 2003 (or later)
-

Notes on Outlook OWA Proxy Enabler Installation

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, WebProxy Agent for Exchange, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

Notes on Outlook Add-In Client Installation

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Microsoft SharePoint Server iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the SharePoint Server iDataAgent:

Application

The Microsoft SharePoint Server iDataAgent supports the following Microsoft SharePoint Server versions:

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 2.0 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SharePoint Portal 2003 Server up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 3.0 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Office Forms Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010*

* SharePoint Document is supported. SharePoint Database is not supported in this release.

Operating System

The Microsoft SharePoint Server iDataAgent are supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft SharePoint Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

121 MB minimum of hard disk space required for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

82 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

An appropriate amount of temp space must be allotted in the Job Results folder to accommodate the SharePoint Database Site Collection, Portal Index, and SharePoint Document metadata.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Microsoft SharePoint Server iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent:

Application

The Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent is supported the following Microsoft SQL Server versions:

Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SQL Server 2008 R2 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Operating System

The Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent is supported the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft SQL Server.

Microsoft Windows XP Editions

Microsoft Windows Vista Editions

Microsoft Windows 7 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

170 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Microsoft SQL Server iDataAgent Installation

- Special configuration considerations applies to the installation of Microsoft SQL Server 32-bit components on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.
 - For more information on backing up SQL on Windows Vista , see [Support for Microsoft Windows Vista](#).
 - If the option to install SQL Server is disabled make sure there is at least one network protocol enabled. For SQL 2000 run SVRNETCN.exe and add the protocols. For SQL 2005 go to SQL Server Configuration Manager and enable protocols for each instance.
 - Microsoft SQL Server Management Objects (SMO) is required on the client machine. SMO is installed by default when SQL Server 2005 or later versions are installed.
-

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent:

Operating System

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows 32-bit File System iDataAgent on:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

110 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 448 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

79 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - MySQL iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the MySQL iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System	Processor
MySQL Enterprise Version 5.051/5.1.43 on:	
Linux CentOS CentOS 4.x or higher with glibc 2.3.x Gentoo Linux Gentoo Linux 10.x with glibc 2.5.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x Source Mage Linux Source Mage Linux SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x Ubuntu Ubuntu 8.04	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Solaris 10.x	x64

Memory

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the MySQL iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#).

On Ubuntu computers, it is required that you install the libstdc++.so.5 compatibility package. To install the package, use the following command:

```
[root]# sudo apt-get install libstdc++5
```

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation</pre>

```
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - NAS NDMP iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the NAS NDMP iDataAgent:

File Server Operating System

For information on NAS NDMP file server support, see [NAS NDMP Compatibility Matrix](#).

MediaAgent Operating System

The NAS NDMP software is installed on a MediaAgent computer running a supported version of the following operating systems:

- AIX
- Linux (except Itanium varieties)
- Solaris
- Windows

See [System Requirements - MediaAgent](#) for information on specific versions supported with these operating systems.

Memory and Hard Disk

See [System Requirements - MediaAgent](#)

It is recommended that the MediaAgent computer also have additional physical memory available equaling 0.1% of the total backup size for the largest amount of data being backup up at any given time. (As an example, for 1 terabyte of backup data, you should have an additional 1 gigabyte of physical memory available.)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

If media changers and/or tape drives are attached to the NetApp file server, all hardware (including the SAN networking hardware) must be of a type supported by the file server.

There is no separate software to install for the NAS NDMP Clients; all required components are installed automatically with the MediaAgent software. See [System Requirements - MediaAgent](#) for information on install information specific to the MediaAgent.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - NetWare Server *iDataAgents*

The following requirements are for the NetWare File System and NDS *iDataAgents*:

Operating System		Processor
NetWare File System <i>iDataAgent</i>	NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	NetWare 6.5 File System on VMware ESX 2.5.1 (as guest operating system)	
	NetWare 6.5 File System on VMware ESX 2.5.2 (as guest operating system)	
	NetWare 6.5 File System on VMware ESX 2.5.3 (as guest operating system)	
	NetWare 6.5 File System on VMware ESX 3.0 (as guest operating system)	
NDS <i>iDataAgent</i>	NetWare 6.5 Branch Office with Support Pack 5	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8	
	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 32-bit required	
	Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 64-bit x64	

The NetWare MediaAgent / *iDataAgents* are installed on a NetWare server using a Novell client computer, with Novell Client 4.91 SP4 on one of the following operating systems:

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions up with a minimum of Service Pack 2

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Novell NetWare TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, NetWare Server, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your NetWare server has DNS services configured.

The NetWare File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the NDS *iDataAgent*, if the File System *iDataAgent* is not already installed.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Novell GroupWise iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Novell GroupWise iDataAgent:

Operating System

Processor

NetWare

GroupWise 6.0 with Support Pack 4 on NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

GroupWise 6.5 with Support Packs 4, 5, and 6 on NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8

GroupWise 7 with Support Pack 3 on NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8

GroupWise 8.0 up to SP1 on NetWare 6.5 up to Support Pack 8

The NetWare MediaAgent / iDataAgents are installed on a NetWare server using a Novell client computer, with Novell Client 4.91 SP4 on one of the following operating systems:

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions up with a minimum of Service Pack 2

OES Linux

GroupWise 7 up to SP3 on OES2 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 10 SP2) 32-bit

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

GroupWise 8.0 up to SP1 on OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 32-bit*

GroupWise 7 up to SP3 on OES2 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 10 SP2) 64-bit

x64

GroupWise 8.0 up to SP1 on OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 64-bit*

* Databases residing on NSS and Non-NSS volumes

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Novell NetWare TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, NetWare Server, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your NetWare server has DNS services configured.

The NetWare File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the Novell GroupWise *iDataAgent*, if the File System *iDataAgent* is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - NetWare Server *iDataAgents*](#).

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - OES File System iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the OES File System iDataAgent:

Operating System

Processor

OES File System

Novell OES Linux up to Support Pack 2

Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 32-bit

Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 64-bit

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

x64

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Novell NetWare TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Novell's Storage Management Service must be installed and configured in order to utilize the Target Service Agents.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, OES Linux computer, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your OES Linux computer has DNS services configured.

The OES File System iDataAgent should be used to protect the data on NSS volumes on an OES Linux computer. In order to protect the data on a POSIX File System, use the Linux File System iDataAgent.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Oracle iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Oracle iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
Oracle 9.2.x Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:		
Linux	Red Flag Linux Red Flag Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Oracle 9.2.x Database 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with maintenance level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x

Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10.x	

Tru64	Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3 or higher	Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended
--------------	-------------------------------------	--

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
---	---

Oracle 10g (10.1.x) Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

Linux	Red Flag Linux	
	Red Flag Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	---

Oracle 10g (10.1.x) Database 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

AIX	AIX 5.2 with maintenance level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	

Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium
--	---------------

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
--	---

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
---------------------------------	-----

Solaris Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
--	----------------------------------

Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
---	--

Solaris 10.x	
--------------	--

Solaris 10.x (Flying Zones supported)	
---------------------------------------	--

Tru64 Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3 or higher	Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended
--	--

Windows Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	---

Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:**Linux Oracle**

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
--	--

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
--	--

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
--	--

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
--	--

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
--	--

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
---------------------------------	--

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
----------------------------------	--

Solaris Solaris 10.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
-----------------------------	--

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
--	---

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
---	--

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
--	--

*Core and R2 Editions not supported	
-------------------------------------	--

Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) Database 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

AIX	AIX 5.2 with maintenance level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Oracle	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Itanium
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	x64
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x (Flying Zones supported)	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
Tru64	Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3 or higher	Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 x64 Editions

Oracle 11g Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

Linux Oracle

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x Intel Pentium or compatible processors

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Oracle 11g Database 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

AIX

AIX 5.3

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

HP-UX

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Intel Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Linux

Oracle

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x

x64

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris

Solaris 9

Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 10.x

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.x) Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

Linux

Oracle

Intel Pentium or compatible processors

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.x) Database 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition) on:

AIX

AIX 5.3

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Linux	Oracle	x64
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
Solaris	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Solaris 10.x	x64
	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Windows

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

AIX, HP-UX Linux, Solaris and Tru64

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

Windows

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

230 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the Oracle *iDataAgent*, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgents*, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*](#)
- [System Requirements - Unix File System *iDataAgent*](#)

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation</code>

use the same name for policy module and the file.

For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc

```
directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Oracle RAC iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Oracle RAC iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
Oracle 9.2.x RAC 64-bit on:		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO_29328 and PHCO_29287 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) RAC 32-bit on:		
Linux	Oracle	Intel Pentium or compatible pro
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
	Solaris	Solaris 10.x
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible proces
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	
Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) RAC 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System
	AIX 6.1	

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO_29328 and PHCO_29287 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Oracle	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium, Power PC (Included or compatible processors)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x6 (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of Service Pack 4 PP1	
	Solaris 10.x with a minimum of Service Pack 4 PP1	x64
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	
Oracle 11g (11.1.x) RAC 32-bit on:		
Linux	Oracle	Intel Pentium or compatible processor
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	
	Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Windows Windows 2003

All Windows-compatible process

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Oracle 11g (11.1.x) RAC 64-bit on:**AIX**

AIX 5.3

Power PC (Includes IBM System

AIX 6.1

HP-UX

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Intel Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Linux**Oracle**

x64

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris

Solaris 9

Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 10.x

Windows Windows 2003

All Windows-compatible process

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.x) RAC 32-bit on:**Linux****Oracle**

Intel Pentium or compatible processor

Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x

Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Windows Windows 2003

All Windows-compatible process

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Oracle 11g R2 (11.2.x) RAC 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System
	AIX 6.1	

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium

Linux	Oracle Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	x64
--------------	--	-----

Solaris	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommen
	Solaris 10.x	x64

Windows Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible process
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
Windows 2008	
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	

Memory

See [System Requirements - Oracle iDataAgent](#)

Hard Disk

See [System Requirements - Oracle iDataAgent](#)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The Oracle iDataAgent must be installed and configured prior to configuring the Oracle RAC iDataAgent. For System Requirements and install information specific to the Oracle iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Oracle iDataAgent](#).

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can name to the policy module, such as a process or application. <version> is the version of the policy module. It is a number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the backup_IDA application fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if you are not sure about the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_cc (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_cc (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_cc (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_content (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```

/opt/<software installation directory>/Base
-- gen_context(system_u:object_r:texrel_shl
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_cc
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_cor
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_conte
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation directory>/Base
-- gen_context(system_u:object_r:texrel_shl

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the follow in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to tmp/backup_IDA.mo
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - ProxyHost iDataAgent

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the ProxyHost iDataAgent:

Operating System		Processor
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x (all kernel and glibc versions supported)	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x (all kernel and glibc versions supported)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 with kernel 2.6.x	
	SuSE Linux	x64
	SuSE Linux 9.x with kernel 2.6.x	
Solaris	SuSE Linux 10.x with kernel 2.6.x	
	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108434-09	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10 with a minimum of Service Pack 118833-17	
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*	

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Unix

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

Unix

215 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM Drive

Network Interface Card

Fibre Channel card (HBA)

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the ProxyHost *iDataAgent*, if the File System *iDataAgent* is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *iDataAgent*](#)
- [System Requirements - Unix File System *iDataAgent*](#)

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` `software` option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user

before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context</pre>

	<pre>(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>
--	---

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SAP for Oracle iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the SAP for Oracle iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
SAP Brtools 6.2 and 6.4 for Oracle 9i Database 32-bit on:		
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SAP Brtools 6.2 and 6.4 for Oracle 9i Database 64-bit on:		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Itanium
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02 Solaris 10	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SAP Brtools 7.0 for Oracle 10g Database 32-bit on:		
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Windows	Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions Windows 2008 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* *Core and R2 Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SAP Brtools 7.0 for Oracle 10g Database 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 AIX 5.3 AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	 This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	x64
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	 This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.	
Solaris	Solaris 10.x (Flying Zones supported)	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows Windows 2003		All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	
SAP Brtools 7.1 for Oracle 10g Database 32-bit on:		
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

SAP Brtools 7.1 for Oracle 10g Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
	Solaris	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
	Solaris 10.x	

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

SAP Brtools 7.1 (Patch 30) for Oracle 11g Database 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

SAP Brtools 7.1 (Patch 30) for Oracle 11g Database 64-bit on:

AIX

AIX 5.3

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

AIX 6.1

HP-UX

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

PA-RISC

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)

Intel Itanium

HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)

Linux

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS

Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x

Power PC (Includes IBM System p)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x

SuSE Linux

Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors

SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x

Solaris

Solaris 9

Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 10.x

Solaris 10.x

x64

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

SAP Brtools 7.2 for Oracle 10g Database 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
<hr/>		
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
	*Core and R2 Editions not supported	

SAP Brtools 7.2 for Oracle 10g Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
Windows Windows 2003		All Windows-compatible processors

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

SAP Brtools 7.2 for Oracle 11g Database 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	

Windows Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
Windows 2008	
Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
*Core and R2 Editions not supported	

SAP Brtools 7.2 for Oracle 11g Database 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux/CentOS 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	
	SuSE Linux	Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	

Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x	
	Solaris 10.x	x64
Windows	Windows 2003	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Editions	
	Windows 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Editions	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions	

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

HP-UX

16 MB RAM beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Solaris

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

Windows

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

230 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the SAP for Oracle iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#)
- [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#)

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) ##### where: <name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --</pre>

```

gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp

Compiling targeted backup_IDA module

/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded

/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod

Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package

rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc

[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp

[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SAP for MAXDB iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the SAP for MAXDB iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
SAP for MAXDB 7.5/7.6 on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium or compatible processors x64
	SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	 x64
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02 Solaris 10.x	A workstation that will support the Sun Solaris operating system
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
SAP for MAXDB 7.7 on:		
AIX	AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium or compatible processors

x64

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x

Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors

Cluster SupportSee [Clustering - Support](#)**Memory**

16 MB RAM beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk**Windows**

111 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the SAP for MAXDB iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such

<p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.


```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Sybase iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Sybase iDataAgent:

Application/Operating System		Processor
Sybase ASE 12.5.3 ESD#6 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.2 with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Sybase ASE 12.5.3 ESD#6 64-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3 AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Solaris	Solaris 10	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Sybase ASE 12.5.4 32-bit on:		
AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors x64
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
*Core Editions not supported		



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Sybase ASE 12.5.4 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
Solaris	Solaris 10	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* *Core Editions not supported	All Windows-compatible processors supported

Sybase ASE 15.0.1 32-bit on:

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	*Core and R2 Editions not supported	

Sybase ASE 15.0.1 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
------------	---	----------------------------------

HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 64-bit Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	
Sybase ASE 15.0.2 32-bit on:		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02	
	Solaris 10.x	
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	
	*Core and R2 Editions not supported	

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Solaris	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 64-bit Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Core Editions not supported	

Sybase ASE 15.0.3 32-bit on:

Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Solaris	Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	*Core Editions not supported	

Sybase ASE 15.0.3 64-bit on:

AIX	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
------------	---	----------------------------------

	runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
Solaris	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Linux	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x	
	SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
	SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
	SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 64-bit Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

Windows

112 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

80 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Unix

225 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the Sybase iDataAgent if it is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#).

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level`

software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --</code>

```
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER


Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the Unix File System iDataAgents.

Operating System		Processor
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	
FreeBSD	FreeBSD 6.x	x86 compatible
	FreeBSD 7.x	x86 compatible
 This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.		
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO_29328 and PHCO_29287 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA-RISC
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
	HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	
SGI IRIX64	SGI IRIX64 6.5 with revision 7.4.2 runtime libraries	SGI workstation with type IP30 system board
Linux	CentOS CentOS 4.x or higher with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Debian Debian 5.x with glibc 2.7.x	
	Fedora Fedora release 8 with glibc 2.7.x Fedora release 9 with glibc 2.8.x Fedora release 10 with glibc 2.9.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	Gentoo Gentoo 10.x with 2.6.x kernel	

Mandriva	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Mandriva Linux 2009 with glibc 2.9.x	
OpenSuSE	x64
OpenSuSE 11.0 with glibc 2.8.x	
OpenSuSE 11.2 with glibc 2.10.1	
Oracle Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Oracle Enterprise Linux 4 with glibc 2.3.x	
Oracle Enterprise Linux 5 with glibc 2.5.x	
Red Flag Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible processors
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Flag Linux 5.x with glibc 2.3.x	x64
Red Hat Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
Red Hat Linux 9.0 32-bit distributions and versions with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
Scientific Linux	x64
Scientific Linux SL 5.2 with glibc 2.5.x	
SuSE Linux	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64, Power PC (Includes IBM System p) or compatible processors
SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x	
SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	
SuSE Linux 11.x with glibc 2.9.x	
Ubuntu	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
Ubuntu 8.04	
Ubuntu 8.10	
Ubuntu 9.04	
Ubuntu 9.10	
Ubuntu 10.04 LTS	
Solaris	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13	
Solaris 9	
Solaris 10.x (Flying Zones supported)	
Solaris 10.x (OpenSolaris supported)	x64

Tru64 Tru64 OSF1 Release 5.1B-3 or higher

Compaq® (DEC) AlphaServer DS Series computer or higher recommended

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

215 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected

The Unix File System *iDataAgents* support the following file system types:

Supported File System(s)	Unix File System <i>iDataAgent(s)</i> Providing Support
Advanced File System (advfs)	Tru64
CD-ROM File System (cdfs)	All
Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2)	AIX
Extended 2 File System (ext2)	Linux
Extended 3 File System (ext3)	Linux
Extended 4 File System (ext4)	Linux
General Parallel File System (GPFS)	Linux
Hierarchical File System (HFS)	HP-UX
Journal File System (JFS)	AIX, HP-UX
Oracle Cluster File System (OCFS2)	Linux
Reiser File System	Linux

(reiserfs)	
Red Hat File System GFS 5.2	Linux
Unix File System (UFS)	All except IRIX
VERITAS File System (VxFS)	AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Solaris
VERITAS Cluster File System (VxCFS)	AIX, HP-UX, Linux, Solaris
'X' File System (XFS)	IRIX and Linux
Zettabyte File System (ZFS)	Solaris 10 6/06 64-bit only

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <pre>policy_module(<name>,<version>) #####</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

```
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

System Requirements

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Virtual Server iDataAgent

The following requirements are for the Virtual Server iDataAgent:

Microsoft Virtual Server/Hyper-V Requirements

The following requirements are for Microsoft Virtual Server/Hyper-V virtual environments.

Virtual Server Application Software

Microsoft Virtual Server 2005 R2 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Hyper-V version 6.x

Physical Machine Operating Systems - Microsoft Virtual Servers

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 32-bit, 64-bit, and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Physical Machine Operating Systems - Hyper-V Virtual Servers

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server Core 2008 x64 Editions

Microsoft Hyper-V Server

Microsoft Windows Server Core 2008 R2 x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

VMware Requirements

The following requirements are for VMware environments.

Special support considerations apply for the components listed below. See [VMware Support Considerations](#) for details.

Virtual Server Application Software (VCB Environments)

VMware ESX Server

VMware ESX 3.0

VMware ESXi 3.0

VMware ESX 3.5

VMware ESXi 3.5

VMware ESX 4.0

VMware ESX 4.1

VMware ESXi 4.0

VMware ESXi 4.1

VMware Management Server

VMware Virtual Center 2.5.0

vCenter 4.0

vCenter 4.1

VMware Utilities

VMware Consolidated Backup 1.5

VMware Converter 3.0.3

vCenter Converter Standalone 4.0.1

Virtual Machine Hardware

Version 4.0

Version 7.0

Virtual Server Application Software (vSphere VADP Environments)

VMware ESX Server

VMware ESX 4.1

VMware ESXi 4.0

VMware ESXi 4.1

VMware Management Server

VDDK1.1.1 or higher (for 64-bit installations, refer to [Notes on 64-bit VDDK1.1.1 Installations](#) below.)

Virtual Machine Hardware

Version 7.0

If the Virtual machine version is of v4.0, backups will be failed back to VCB mounter and backup continues. Hence, it is recommended to upgrade your virtual machines to v7.0.

Virtual Machine Operating Systems

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Proxy Computer Operating Systems

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

For Hyper-V, only virtualization-capable processors are supported.

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

117 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

81 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Notes on Virtual Server iDataAgent Installations for Microsoft Virtual Servers/Hyper-V

For Microsoft Windows Virtual Server Microsoft Windows 2008 Hyper-V, the Virtual Server iDataAgent is installed directly onto the host computer.

Prior to installing the Virtual Server iDataAgent for use with Microsoft Windows 2008 Hyper-V, the latest available HotFixes must be installed. This HotFix allows backups of virtual machines with invalid, missing, or corrupt configuration files. To obtain the latest HotFixes, you can run a Windows update on the computer or obtain them from the Microsoft web site.

Notes on Virtual Server iDataAgent Installations for VMware

For VMware, the Virtual Server iDataAgent is installed on a proxy computer that can communicate with the host computer.

Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 or higher is required for VMware virtual server discovery.

If Microsoft .NET Framework is not installed during the Virtual Server iDataAgent installation, the .NET Framework software must be installed following the Virtual Server iDataAgent.

VMware Support Considerations

Consider the following prior to installing the Virtual Server iDataAgent:

The following utilities must be installed prior to performing any backup operations using the Virtual Server iDataAgent (these packages can be obtained from the VMware web site):

- VMware Consolidated Backup (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.)
 - The Virtual Server iDataAgent supports all modes supported by the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
 - Refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Consolidated Backup utility.
- VMware Converter (refer to the VMware customer support web site for support information for the VMware Converter utility.)
 - Ensure that the guest operating systems are using the supported version of the VMware Converter.
 - The VMware Convert 4.0 package must be installed for Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008 environments.

Ensure that the latest version of VMware Consolidated Backup and that VMware Converter 4.0.1 are installed.

- Restores of entire virtual machines from ESX Server 4.0 to a prior version of ESX Server are not supported.

Notes on VDDK1.1.1 Installations

If installing VDDK1.1.1 or higher on 64-bit operating systems, the following steps must be performed:

1. VDDK 1.1.1 must first be installed on the proxy server to its default location.

For example, `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VMware Virtual Disk Development Kit`

2. Create a new folder and point it to the path below on the proxy computer.

For example, `C:\Program Files\VMware\VMware Virtual Disk Development Kit\`

3. From the VDDK x64 installation directory `C:\Program Files (x86)\VMware\VMware Virtual Disk Development Kit\bin`, unzip the `vddk64` folder to a temporary location. Once unzipped, copy the `bin`, `lib`, and `plugins` folders to the new folder created in **Step 2**.

4. Create the following registry key:

`HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\VMware, Inc.\VMware Virtual Disk Development Kit\InstallPath`

with the following string value: (this should be the path created in **Step 2**)

`C:\Program Files\VMware\VMware Virtual Disk Development Kit\`

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Workstation Backup Agent - Source

Source | [Destination](#)

The following requirements are for Workstation Backup Agent [Source Computer](#):

Operating System

Desktop Class

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Home 32-bit Edition* with Service Pack 2 or higher

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition* with Service Pack 2 or higher

*Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 922582 to obtain this patch.

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Server Class

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications; 512 MB RAM recommended.

Hard Disk

Windows

221 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 221 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

118 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

For installation using MSI packages on Windows Vista and Windows 7, Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package must be manually installed.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Workstation Backup Agent - Destination

[Source](#) | [Destination](#)

The destination is a computer installed with ContinuousDataReplicator. The following operating system are supported for destination:

Operating System

The destination is a computer installed with ContinuousDataReplicator. The following operating systems are supported for destination.

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 32-bit and x64 Edition with Service Pack 2

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

512 MB RAM minimum required, of which a minimum of 64 MB RAM is required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications for successful ContinuousDataReplicator operations; 1 GB RAM recommended.

Hard Disk

66 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent is not automatically installed during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. If you wish to install the File System iDataAgent, you must select the option to do so during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - 1-Touch for Windows

The following requirements are for 1-Touch for Windows:

Operating System

1-Touch Server on:

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

*Core Editions not supported

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

1-Touch Client on:

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

2.6 GB minimum of hard disk space for 1-Touch software installation/ 3.4 GB recommended

110 MB for the required File System *iDataAgent*/ 448 recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

134 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

The Distribution folders in the 1-Touch server will require the following additional disk space:

- 525 MB for each Microsoft Windows Distribution folder (CD images) that will be imported for client recovery
- 10 MB per client prepared for recovery for the 1-Touch client configuration files

Localized versions of Windows can vary in size between 300 to 370 MB, depending on the language. Other factors that affect the size of the 1-Touch Boot CD can be the set of device drivers that you include and additional components in your Boot CD image.

Peripherals

A CD-ROM burner and software to convert the ISO image to a bootable CD-ROM are required for the 1-Touch Server.

A CD-ROM drive or ability to boot from an ISO image file is required to boot the 1-Touch client for recovery.

Notes on Client Installations

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the 1-Touch server software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements install information specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File Systems](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

For 1-Touch Client:

Data types File System and System State are supported.

The following configurations cannot be recovered using the 1-Touch process:

- Multi-operating system boot systems, unless the primary active boot partition is the active partition in the backup
- A CommServe
- The 1-Touch client cannot serve as the MediaAgent for performing a 1-Touch restore. If the client was performing LAN Free Backups to the MediaAgent installed on the Client, a separate MediaAgent that has access to the data is required. If you do not have a separate MediaAgent, do the following:
 - Install MediaAgent on a standby server that has access to the secondary storage where the 1-Touch client's data is residing
 - Configure the secondary storage on the standby MediaAgent using the [Library and Drive Configuration](#) tool

Unattended installation for Microsoft Windows 2003 or higher does not support installing Windows to a drive other than C:\.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our

System Requirements

software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - 1-Touch for Unix

The following requirements are for 1-Touch Server and Client on:

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit with technology level 2	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	PA-RISC
 HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris Solaris 8 32-bit with Service Packs 108434-09, 108435-09, and 109147-20 Solaris 8 64-bit with Service Packs 108434-09, 108435-09, and 109147-20 Solaris 9 4/04 32-bit Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit Solaris 9 32-bit Solaris 9 64-bit Solaris 10 64-bit	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Hard Disk

AIX

The 1-Touch Server requires 2 GB of disk space per client for the 1-Touch client configuration files.

HP-UX

The 1-Touch Server requires 2 GB of disk space per client for the 1-Touch client configuration files.

The 1-Touch Client requires 2 GB of disk space per client.

Linux

The 1-Touch Server requires 2GB of disk space per client on 1-Touch server NFS share for 1-Touch client configuration files.

The 1-Touch Client requires 500 MB of disk space for 1-Touch client configuration files.

Solaris

The 1-Touch Server and client requires 500 MB of disk space.

Peripherals

A CD-ROM burner and software to convert the ISO image to a bootable CD-ROM are required for the 1-Touch Server.

A CD-ROM drive or ability to boot from an ISO image file is required to boot the 1-Touch client for recovery.

Miscellaneous

For Memory and other requirements, see [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#).

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of the 1-Touch server software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Unix File System iDataAgent](#).

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>

<pre><directory>/<file_name>.fc</pre> <p>where:</p> <pre><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</pre> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>
--	---

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
```

```

Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on Client Installations

The following packages are required for 1Touch clients on Linux:

- mkisofs
- syslinux 2.11 (syslinux-2.11-1 is the minimum version required)
- 1-Touch for Unix supports the following File system and volume manager types:

Operating System	Supported File system and volume manager types
Linux	Linux Logical Volume Manager (LVM) Version 2 Extent 2 File System (ext2) (Red Hat Linux) Extent 3 File System (ext3) (Red Hat Linux) Reiser File System (reiserfs) (SuSE Linux) No Software RAID support
AIX	AIX logical Volume Manager for Root and Non- root Volumes (LVM) VERITAS Volume Manager for Non root Volumes (VXVM) Journal File System (JFS) (AIX) Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2) (AIX)
HP-UX	HPUX Logical Volume Manager for Root and Non-Root volumes (LVM) VERITAS Volume Manager for Root and Non Root volumes (VxVM) HFS File system (HFS) VERITAS File System (VxFS)
Solaris	VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM) (unencapsulated root volume only) Solaris Volume Manager (svm) UNIX File System (UFS) VERITAS File System (VxFS)
Linux Boot loader	elilo (Itanium-based computers)

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our

System Requirements

software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Data Classification Enabler

The following requirements are for Data Classification:

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 with maintenance level 7 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 (Update 5) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
 Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS/ES 4.0 (Update 5) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	x64
For Red Hat Linux, GFS is supported on single nodes. Clustered file systems are not supported.	
SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

2.3.x (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel x64
2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

Solaris

Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Solaris 9 with a minimum of Service Packs 111711-02

Solaris 10.x

Solaris 10.x x64

For Solaris, the Zettabyte File System (ZFS) is required to ensure that the FSF Driver install will work.

Windows Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Supported Applications

The Data Classification Enabler for Exchange is supported for the following applications:

- Microsoft Exchange 2003 Server
- Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server

Data Classification for Exchange is not supported only if Exchange 2007 Cluster Continuous Replication (CCR) Configuration is installed on Windows 2003.

SRM Support

See [System Requirements - SRM Windows File System Agent](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

8 MB plus an additional 8-13 MB for each NTFS volume minimum required

Hard Disk

For the software, a file stored at the root of each NTFS volume of approximately 40 MB for every 100,000 files/folders on that volume with the default Indexes. The [DC_CREATE_INDEX](#) registry key allows you to administer indices for Data Classification databases.

The metafiles (databases) created by Data Classification usually consume about 5% of the total space on the hard disk. Depending on the type of data and folder layout, the metafiles may consume additional space.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Task Scheduler services configured on the computer The Data Classification Enabler on Unix supports the following file system types:

Supported File System(s)	Platform Associated with the Enabler
Enhanced Journal File System (JFS2)	AIX
Extended 2 File System (ext2)	Linux
Extended 3 File System (ext3)	Linux
Global File System 2 (GFS2)	Linux
Unix File System (UFS)	Solaris
VERITAS File System (VxFS)	Solaris
'X' File System (XFS)	Linux
Zettabyte File System (ZFS)	Solaris

Data Classification can be installed independently of any agent. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System iDataAgents, refer to:

- [System Requirements - File Archiver for Windows Agent](#)
- [System Requirements - Windows File System iDataAgent](#)

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --</code>

```

gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp

Compiling targeted backup_IDA module

/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded

/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod

Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package

rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc

[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp

[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Content Indexing Engine

The following requirements are for the Content Indexing Engine:

Operating System

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions

Processor

Dual-Core Intel® Xeon® processor 5100 series minimum required; Quad-Core Intel® Xeon® processor 5300 series recommended

Memory

4 GB RAM minimum required; 8 GB RAM recommended

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

Hard Disk

1 GB of local disk space for software.

1 TB of local disk space for index directories.

See Also:

- [Notes on Space Requirements](#)
 - [Hard Disk Recommendations](#)
-

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Port Requirements

A sequential port range that spans 4000 ports on each computer that will host the Content Indexing Engine. For example, port range 13000 – 17000.

These are local ports used by the Content Indexing Services. These ports are NOT required to be opened in the firewall.

By default the Content Indexing Engine uses a default base port number of 13000 and a default administration GUI port number of 16000 (base port plus 3000). Using ports below 1024 is not recommended.

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent will be automatically installed during installation of this software, if it is not already installed. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008

Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Content Indexing Engine Installations

The Content Indexing Engine is a resource intensive application that requires dedicated servers. There should be no other applications or software components installed.

Each node should have a single physical network interface card (NIC) with a unique name and a static IP address on all host computers where the Content Indexing Engine will be installed.

Content Indexing Engines can only be installed on hosts that have a fully qualified domain name.

Before installing the Content Indexing Engine on a Windows 2008 machine, it is recommended to turn off the User Account Control (UAC).

Use the `ipconfig/all` command to verify the hostname and fully qualified domain name for the installation host. Also, ensure the hostname and the fully qualified domain name are reachable from the CommCell network and resolve correctly using DNS.

Perform forward and reverse lookups on the host's fully qualified domain name. Execute the command `nslookup <host_name.fully_qualified_domain_name.com>` where `host_name.fully_qualified_domain_name.com` is the fully qualified domain name of the installation host. Repeat for each installation host and note the reply from the command. Make a reverse lookup on the IP address returned by the command. Make sure that the primary host name is the same as the one returned by the name lookup. In short, for each host, the information across these commands and files should be consistent: `hostname`, `nslookup` and/or `ipconfig`.

When installing on multiple nodes, the date/time on the nodes must be synchronized.

The Content Indexing Engine requires that the clock is kept in sync and not abruptly corrected forwards or backwards. Avoid manual clock adjustments and consider using professional software for keeping clocks synchronized.

Set the server Time Zone to either GMT or UTC and always uncheck the option **Automatically adjust clock for daylight saving changes** on the Time Zone settings.

It is recommended that anti-virus software is not run on the servers running the Content Indexing Engine. If anti-virus software must be installed as a business requirement, the Content Indexing software and data directories must be excluded from real-time or scheduled scanning.

Disable the Windows Indexing Service. The Content Indexing data directory should be located on a dedicated physical disk separate from the operating system and application installations. The optimal configuration would include a mirrored set (RAID1) for the operating system and application installations and a striped set (RAID 5 or 10) for the Content Indexing data directory.

If possible, install The Content Indexing Engine on a separate physical disk than the one Windows is running from. e.g., C:\. Do not assign the paging file or system directories on this disk. The optimal is to install The Content Indexing Engine on a striped disk array (RAID 0).

If a Multi Node installation is performed, the temporary directory of the user doing the installation needs to be on a partition with the administrative share enabled, and this user needs to be able to access that administrative share. The user's temporary directory is usually on the C:\ partition. To test if the administrative share is enabled and accessible for partition C:\ on the host `myhost.example.com`, execute the command `dir \\myhost.example.com\c$` from a different host. This should produce the same output as the command `dir c:` run locally on `myhost.example.com`.

When installing behind a firewall, make sure that all the nodes are in the same side of the firewall.

In a multi-node setup, the admin node and the index nodes must reside on the same GIGE LAN subnet.

Outlook 2003 or later should be installed on the Web Search node.

Installation Types

The Content Indexing Engine provides two installation types:

- **Single Node**

Installs all required components on a single host. This installation type is primarily intended for evaluation or demonstration purposes and smaller environments. The installation requires very little user interaction, but the user should be familiar with most of the concepts explained for the Multi Node installation type before running the installer. See [Install the Content Indexing Engine - Single Node Installation](#) for step-by-step instructions.

- **Multi Node**

Provides a fully interactive GUI for selecting and deploying components across all target hosts. This will build an InstallProfile.xml file which contains the full system description. This must be saved, and used during the installation for all the nodes in the cluster. See [Install the Content Indexing Engine - Multi-Node Installation](#) for step-by-step instructions.

Contact Professional Services for assistance in planning and deploying the Content Indexing Engine and Search in your environment.

Notes on Space Requirements

It is a best practice to allocate 1TB space per node for the Content Indexing Engine. This allocation of space will account for the required space necessary to sustain the metadata within the index and the transient need to allocate additional space as the index partitions are built and re-distributed. During the re-distribution of indexed content among partitions, the space consumption of what is in the INDEX at the time of the partition re-order will be 100% of the index footprint. On completion of that partition ordering process the staging space is released.

This is very similar to the optimization process that any indexer (eg., Alta Vista, a deduplication appliance, etc) will use for re-ordering the content associated with index performance optimization.

For email data within the Index, the estimate will be 33% of the size of the total mail volume to be indexed as part of the index size.

For file system data within the Index, the estimate will be between 3-10% depending on the data type.

Examples:

- In the case of a small text only document, since the file is very small and only composed of text, the index footprint would be 100%.
- A 3MB Microsoft PowerPoint presentation will normally index to approximately 10-20KB of the text.
- A document including many images may index to a handful of pages of actual text and have a 1-3% index footprint.

There are a couple of ways to reduce the size of the Content Indexes.

1. Filters can be defined that either include or exclude specific document types. Images and multimedia files are of no value in a Content Index as they have no body to index.
2. Set proper retention settings for the Content Indexes. For example, if vast majority of searches will be performed within 90 days of them entering the system, then you can set the retention settings such that the Content Indexes expire after 90 days. All data that was retained can still be re-Content Indexed if there was a special need to retain them beyond the retention date.

Hard Disk Recommendations

Keep in mind the following hard disk recommendations:

- A minimum of three disks in a RAID configuration are recommended.
- Serial Attach SCSI (SAS) 15K RPM hard disks are recommended for optimum performance.

- SATA (Serial Advanced Technology Attachment) disks are recommended for Content Indexing in environments with minimum search and index concurrency.

The following table provides a summary of available disk options:

Criteria	Description	SATA	SAS 10k	SAS 15k
Performance	The primary metric to predict Content Indexing performance will be the sustained I/O Operations Per Second (IOPS). Optimum IOPS is obtained by using 4 or more spindles in a RAID configuration.	Good	Better	Best
Reliability	The MTBF (Mean Time Between Failure) for SAS disks is usually between 1 and 1.5 million hours. For SATA disks, the figure is between 0.6 and 1 million hours.	Good	Best	Better
Cost	Enterprise SATA disks offer a lower price per GB than equivalent SAS disks. The total cost of ownership should consider not only the initial price, but also the expected lifespan of the disk.	Best	Better	Good

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Online Content Indexing for File System Agent

The following requirements are for Online Content Indexing for Windows File System Agent:

Operating System

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system

Hard Disk

149 MB of local disk space for software/ 548 MB recommended

88 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The following will be automatically installed during the installation of this software, if it is not already installed:

Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0

The File System *i*DataAgent and Data Classification Enabler - For System Requirements specific to these components, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System *i*DataAgent](#)
 - [System Requirements - Data Classification Enabler](#)
-

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent

The following requirements are for Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent:

Application

The Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent supports the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Operating System

The Online Content Indexing for Exchange Agent supports the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

154 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 548 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth for each iDataAgent

90 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The following will be automatically installed during the installation of this software, if it is not already installed:

Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0

The File System iDataAgent and Data Classification Enabler - For System Requirements specific to these components, refer to:

- [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#)
 - [System Requirements - Data Classification Enabler](#)
-

Notes on Data Classification for Exchange Installations

Data Classification for Exchange is not supported on an Exchange 2007 CCR cluster.

Notes on Exchange 2007 Installations

Online Content Indexing Exchange is only supported on off-host proxy.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Web Search Server

The following requirements are for the Content Indexing and Search - Web Search interface:

Operating System

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended

Virtual memory should be set to twice the amount of available physical memory

Web Browser

Microsoft Internet Explorer (IE) versions 6.0, 7.0, 8.0

IE8 is supported on Web Search Server only if Compatibility View is enabled.

Mozilla Firefox version 3.0 or higher

Safari version 3.x or higher. (Some functionalities for Safari on Windows/Macintosh may not be supported). See [IIS Settings for Safari on Web Search Server](#).

Hard Disk

161 MB of local disk space for Web Search Server software and log file growth/ 499 MB recommended

170 MB of local disk space for the Microsoft SQL application and database/ 498 MB recommended.
(Microsoft SQL Server is embedded in the Web Search Server software installation)

1GB of local disk space for the Web Search Server database growth

Web Search Server installation requires additional 200 MB of free disk space on the drive in which the Operating System and `temp` directory resides, to copy temporary files during the install or upgrade process.

The job results directory for the File System `iDataAgent` that is installed on the Web Server should have enough space to cache the search restores from users. This depends on the number of files that may be restored, disk quota and the retention period configured by the administrator.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card.

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer (See [Internet Protocols](#) for supported versions.)

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 6.0

Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 7.0

All components of the Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager version 7.0 must be installed on Windows 2008.

Microsoft Office Outlook with the latest service pack. Also, in order to take advantage of Web Search Server capabilities from the Outlook Add-In, make sure that the latest service pack for Microsoft Office Outlook application is installed on the client where Outlook Add-In is installed.

The following will be automatically installed during the installation of this software if it is not already installed:

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Enterprise Edition (with Service Pack 2) will be automatically installed while installing the software. Later versions of the Service Pack, if available, are also supported. (* See Disclaimer below.)

Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0

Microsoft Visual J# 2.0 Redistributable

Microsoft ASP.NET 3.5 Ajax Extensions 1.0

File System iDataAgent - For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 3.5 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

For successful web restore of NAS data install NDMP Restore Enabler on 32 bit proxy instance on a 64 bit machine.

Notes on IIS Settings for Safari on Web Search Server

The Web Search Server is a resource intensive application and should be installed on a dedicated server. Hence, we recommend that the Web Search Server not be installed on a computer running other applications, such as Microsoft Exchange Server, an Oracle database, etc.

The software should not be installed on a compressed drive.

The Microsoft SQL Server application that is installed on the computer must be dedicated to support the software and cannot be shared by other applications.

The computer on which the software is installed must have a static IP address. The software does not support Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP).

The database instance used by the software requires specific SQL server settings. Verify the following settings by viewing the SQL properties using the SQL Management Studio and by running the SQL Server system stored procedure, which is `sp_helpsort`.

- In the `Memory` tab, the dynamically configured `Maximum` memory should be 50% of the physical memory available in the computer on which the software is installed
- `Character Set` is `1252/ISO` (default)
- `Sort Order` is `Dictionary order, case Insensitive`
- `Unicode Collation` includes `General Unicode, case Insensitive, width Insensitive`

- Verify the following from the **Data Files** tab of the **tempdb Properties** dialog box:
 - The **tempdb** SQL database has at least 100 MB of disk space
 - The **Automatically grow file** option is selected
 - The **file growth** is set to 20%

If there is a firewall between the CommServe and the Web Search Server, make sure that there is ODBC connectivity between the two servers and the appropriate ports are opened in the firewall. For information on setting up the SQL server connectivity, refer Microsoft KB article [914277](#).

The 64-bit Web Server Installation includes a 32-bit Windows File System *iDataAgent* installation.

IIS Settings for Safari on Web Search Server

In order to access the Web Search Server from a Safari Web browser on a Macintosh computer, you need to perform the following IIS settings on the Web Search Server:

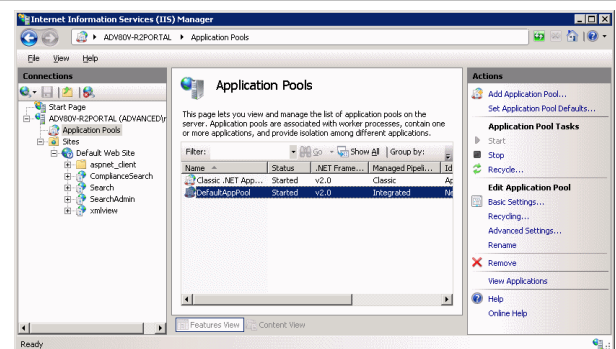
- From the IIS Manager window, right click the Web Search Server web site (Compliance Search, End User search, or the Search Admin web site) and select **Properties**.
- From the **Properties (Directory Security)** tab, click **Edit** in the **Authentication and access control** group.
- From the Authentication Methods dialog box, select **Basic Authentication (password is sent in clear text)** option.
- IIS Manager displays a security warning message. Click **Yes**.
- Click **OK**.

Notes on IIS 7.5 Security Settings for Windows 2008 R2 Search Queries

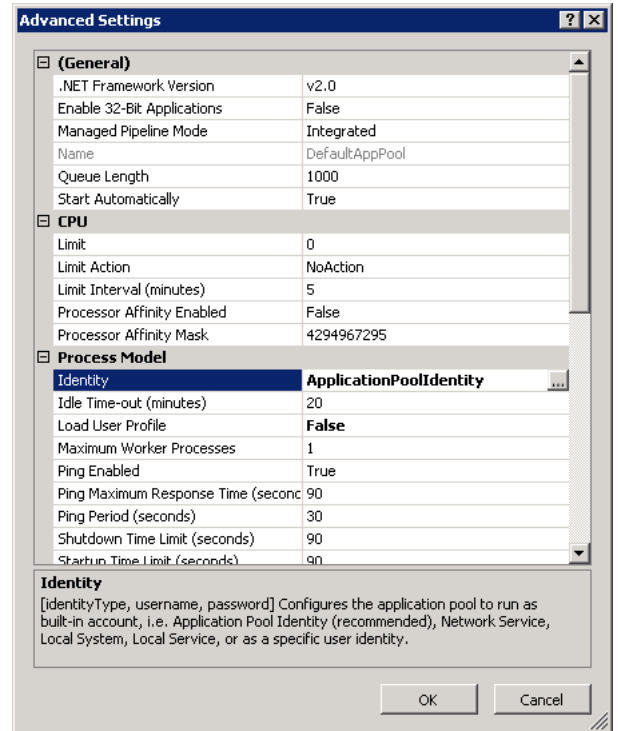
In order to perform searches from Web Search Server, you need to change the default security of Microsoft IIS 7.5 that is included with Windows 2008 R2. The default security configuration sets application pools to run as the "application pool identity". To resolve error messages that are displayed with this default setting, you must change the default application pool identity to run as the Network Service account instead.

To change the default security setting of the IIS:

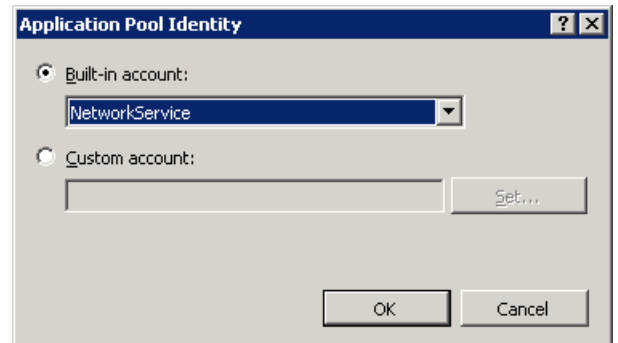
1. On the Web Search Server, navigate to IIS Manager (under Administrative Tools).
2. In the left-hand pane of the IIS Manager tool, expand the machine node.



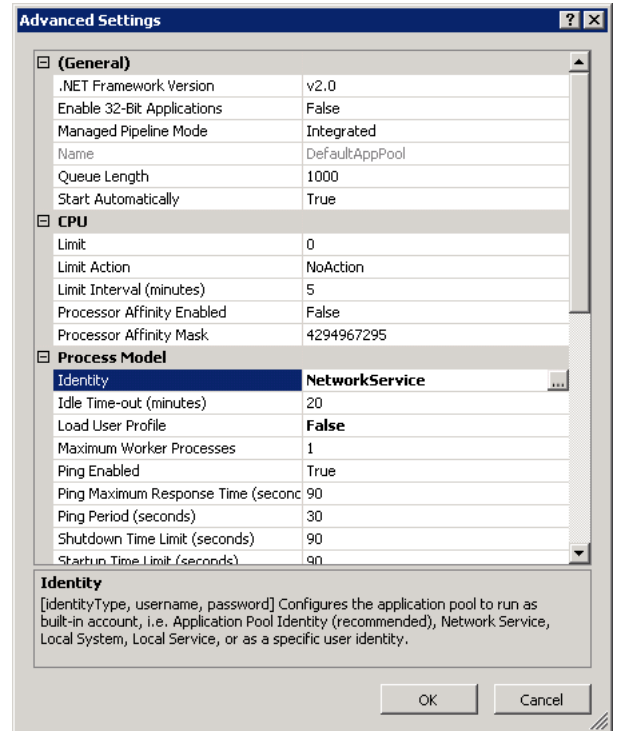
3. Click on **Application Pools** in the left pane.
4. Right-click on the **DefaultAppPool** in the right pane and choose **Advanced Settings**.
5. Navigate to the **Process Model** section and click on the line that says **Identity**.



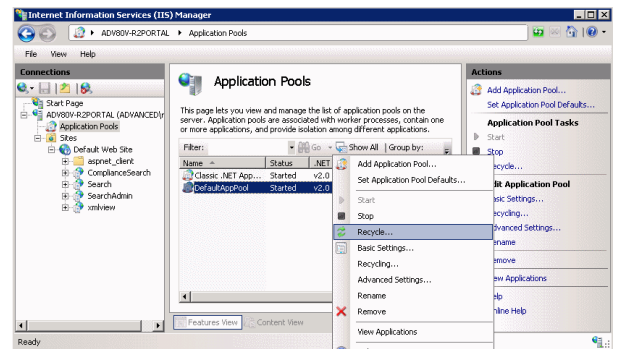
6. Click on ... button next to **ApplicationPoolIdentity** to change it.
7. Change this setting from **ApplicationPoolIdentity** to **NetworkService** from the **Built-in account** drop-down.



8. Click **OK** to commit the changes.



9. Recycle the Application Pool to ensure that the settings take effect by right-clicking on **DefaultAppPool** and choosing **Recycle**.



DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - QuickRecovery Agent

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the QuickRecovery Agent:

If using this Agent with a snapshot engine, refer to [System Requirements-QuickRecovery Agent - Snapshots Support](#) information on the operating system vendors supported for each snapshot engine with this Agent.

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 32-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit	PA-RISC
HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit (Supported with the Generic Enabler only.)	Intel Itanium
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	x64
Solaris Solaris 8 64-bit with Service Packs 108434-09,108435 and 109147-20 Solaris 9 64-bit with Service Packs 111711-02 and 111712-02 Solaris 10 64-bit	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Windows Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and application server

Swap space = 2*RAM size recommended

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris

225 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

101 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level software` option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p><code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code></p> <p>#####</p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <p><code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code></p>
<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p> <p><code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code></p>

```
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Recovery Director

The following requirements are for Recovery Director:

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 32-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) 64-bit (Supported with the Generic Enabler only.)	PA-RISC Intel Itanium
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 32-bit with kernel RH 2.4.21-15 and glibc 2.3.2-95.20 Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 5 with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 5 with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required x64
Solaris Solaris 8 64-bit with Service Packs 108434-09, 108435-09, and 109147-20 Solaris 9 64-bit with Service Packs 111711-02 and 111712-02 Solaris 10 64-bit	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows Windows 2003 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Enterprise 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2 Microsoft Windows Storage Server 2003 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2	All Windows-compatible processors supported

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 64-bit Edition* up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 64-bit Datacenter Edition* with Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition* up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Enterprise x64 Edition** up to Service Pack 2

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

**Contact your software provider prior to installing the software on this platform.

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and application server

Swap space = 2*RAM size recommended

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

The above mentioned requirements are beyond the requirements stated for [System Requirements - Quick Recovery Agent](#).

Hard Disk

AIX, HP-UX, Linux, and Solaris

225 MB minimum of hard drive space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

102 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 199 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

79 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

The above mentioned requirements are beyond the requirements stated for [System Requirements - Quick Recovery Agent](#).

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

For details on snapshot engines supported by Recovery Director, see [Support Information - Snapshot Engines](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> ##### where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --gen_context</code>

```
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)
```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

System Requirements

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - QSnap

The following requirements are for QSnap and the Unix File System *iDataAgent*:

The QSnap software is supported for use with a variety of different Agents. However, not all Agents support QSnap with all operating system vendors listed below. See [Snapshot Engines - Support](#) for information on supported operating system vendors for QSnap with each Agent.

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-15 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel RH 2.4.21-47 (Update 8) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-55 (Update 5) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-67 (Update 6) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform 5.0 with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform 5.0 with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	
SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.191-smp (Patch Level 2) SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)	

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel
2.6.16.21-0.8

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel
2.6.16.46-0.12

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.34 (Update 2)

Solaris

Solaris 8

Solaris 9

Solaris 10

Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Windows Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition
with Service Pack 1 or 2

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Small Business Server 2003
Premium 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard 32-bit
Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 32-bit
up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64
Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Web Server 32-bit
Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Storage Server 2003 32-bit
Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 64-bit
Edition up to Service Pack 2

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64
Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

All Windows-compatible processors
supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

Unix

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications. Additional memory used when a snapshot is created, varying by File System activity and the amount of data being backed up.

Hard Disk

Unix

225 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Windows

99 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 99 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

100 MB of temp space or more on the source volume(s) to create snapshots and keep snapshot specific data

76 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Unix

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> ##### where:

<p>use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p><name> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.fc</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Windows

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Notes on Linux Installations

If you are installing the software on a computer running Red Hat Linux version 5, you must first enter the following command into the `/etc/rc.d/rc.sysinit` file.

```
/etc/init.d/cxgb start
```

This command should be entered before the local non-root file systems are checked.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - QSnap with the Windows File System iDataAgent

The following requirements are for QSnap and the Windows File System iDataAgent:

Operating System

Windows 2000

Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional with Service Pack 2, 3 or 4

Microsoft Windows 2000 Server with Service Pack 2, 3 or 4

Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server with Service Pack 2, 3 or 4

Microsoft Windows 2000 Datacenter Server

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with Service Pack 1 or 2

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Small Business Server 2003 Premium 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 32-bit up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Web Server 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Storage Server 2003 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 64-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications. Additional memory used when a snapshot is created, varying by File System activity and the amount of data being backed up.

Hard Disk

99 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 99 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

100 MB of temp space or more on the source volume(s) to create snapshots and keep snapshot specific data

76 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

When using multiple NIC cards, Service Pack 3 must be installed on Windows 2000 Operating System to detect all the names associated with the NIC cards

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - QSnap with the Unix File System iDataAgent

The following requirements are for QSnap and the Unix File System iDataAgent:

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel 2.4.21-15 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 3.0 with kernel RH 2.4.21-47 (Update 8) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-55 (Update 5) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-67 (Update 6) Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform 5.0 with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5 Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform 5.0 with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2) Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3) SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.191-smp (Patch Level 2) SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3) SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)	

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel
2.6.16.21-0.8

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel
2.6.16.46-0.12

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

Solaris	Solaris 8	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 9	
	Solaris 10	

Memory

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Hard Disk

225 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for

	the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.
<pre><directory>/<file_name>.fc</pre> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre> <p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
```

```
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
```

```
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
```

```
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod

Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on Linux Installations

If you are installing the software on a computer running Red Hat Linux version 5, you must first enter the following command into the `/etc/rc.d/rc.sysinit` file.

```
/etc/init.d/cxbf start
```

This command should be entered before the local non-root file systems are checked.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent

The Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent supports the following Lotus Domino Server releases in both Domino Cluster and non-Domino Cluster environments.

Application/Operating System		Processor
Lotus Domino Server Release 6.5.x 32-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux**	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Solaris**	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Lotus Domino Server Release 7.0.x 32-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux**	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Solaris**	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported x64
Lotus Domino Server Release 8.0.x 32-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux**	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

2.4.x

Solaris**	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Editions* <small>*Core and R2 Editions not supported</small>	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions* <small>*Core and R2 Editions not supported</small>	x64
Lotus Domino Server Release 8.0.x 64-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1	All Windows-compatible processors supported
Lotus Domino Server Release 8.5.x 32-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Linux**	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with glibc 2.5.x SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server Edition with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
Solaris**	Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1 Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* <small>*Core Editions not supported</small>	All Windows-compatible processors supported x64
Lotus Domino Server Release 8.5.x 64-bit on:		
AIX**	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
Windows	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 x64* Editions with	x64

a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

* For 32-bit Domino Servers running on Windows Server 2003 and 2008 x64 platforms, special considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information. For Windows Server 2008 platforms, Core Editions are not supported.

** The Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent is supported on the listed Unix platforms for recall operations only. See [Archive Management for Unix-Based Domino Servers](#) for information on using the Domino Mailbox Archiver Agent on these platforms.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Supported Components

Lotus Notes Client Add-In

The Lotus Notes Client Add-In is supported with the following Lotus Notes client applications running on a Microsoft Windows platform:

- Notes Client 8.5.x
 - Notes Client 8.0.x
 - Notes Client 7.0.x
 - Notes Client 6.5.x
-

Memory

AIX, Linux, and Solaris

64 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications*

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

32 MB RAM per stream/drive minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications*

*Very Large Memory Module (VLMM) supported.

Hard Disk

AIX, Linux, and Solaris

95 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Windows

114MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 498 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

81 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Domino Cluster Installations

If you are running a Lotus Domino Server in a Domino Cluster, special restore considerations apply. See [Restore Considerations for this Agent](#) in [Restore Data - Lotus Notes/Domino Server](#) for more information.

Notes on Lotus Notes Client Add-In Installations

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent

The following requirements are for the Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent:

Application

The Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent supports the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2000 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack*

*Special configuration considerations apply. See [Considerations for Exchange Server 2010](#) for more information.

Operating System

The Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent is supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Supported Components

OWA Proxy Enabler

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Outlook Add-In Client

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

The Outlook Add-In Client does not support Microsoft Outlook 2010.

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

104 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

78 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Exchange Compliance Archiver Agent Installation

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 requires "csvde.exe" feature to be installed on the server to query Active Directory for mailbox information
 - To install "csvde.exe" feature on Windows Server 2008 follow these steps:
 1. Open Server Manager
 2. Go to Features->Add Feature
 3. Remote Server Administration Tools
 4. Role Administration Tools
 5. Select "Active Directory Lightweight Directory Service Tools"
-

Notes on Outlook OWA Proxy Enabler Installation

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, WebProxy Agent for Exchange, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

Notes on Outlook Add-In Client Installation

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent

The following requirements are for the Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent:

Application

The Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent supports the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2000 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2010 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack*

*Special configuration considerations apply. See [Considerations for Exchange Server 2010](#) for more information.

Operating System

The Exchange Mailbox Archiver Agent is supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Supported Components

OWA Proxy Enabler

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Web Proxy Agent

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Outlook Add-In Client

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

OWA Proxy Enabler

121 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

79 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Web Proxy Agent

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Outlook Add-In Client

35 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 50 MB recommended

21 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Data Classification for Exchange Installation

Data Classification for Exchange is not supported on an Exchange 2007 CCR cluster.

Notes on Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgent Installation

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 requires "csvde.exe" feature to be installed on the server to query Active Directory for mailbox information
 - To install "csvde.exe" feature on Windows Server 2008 follow these steps:
 1. Open Server Manager
 2. Go to Features->Add Feature
 3. Remote Server Administration Tools
 4. Role Administration Tools
 5. Select "Active Directory Lightweight Directory Service Tools
-

Notes on Outlook OWA Proxy Enabler Installation

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, WebProxy Agent for Exchange, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the

Exchange Server.

Notes on Outlook Add-In Client Installation

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent

The following requirements are for the Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent:

Application

The Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent supports the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2000 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2003 32-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server up to the latest service pack

Operating System

The Exchange Public Folder Archiver Agent is supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Supported Components

OWA Proxy Enabler

The OWA Proxy Enabler is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Web Proxy Agent

The Web Proxy Agent is supported on any platform supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Outlook Add-In Client

The Outlook Add-In Client is supported with any version of Microsoft Outlook supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

The Outlook Add-In Client does not support Microsoft Outlook 2010.

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

OWA Proxy Enabler

121 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

79 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Web Proxy Agent

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Outlook Add-In Client

35 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 50 MB recommended

21 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Notes on Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgent Installation

Microsoft Exchange 2007 64-bit Server Agents are 32-bit MAPI-based Agents installed on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for information on installation and configuration requirements for these Agents.

- The Microsoft Exchange 2003 and 2007 Mailbox and Public Folder-based Agents can be installed in two ways:
 - directly on the Microsoft Exchange Server computer
 - as Proxy Agents on a separate computer running a supported 32-bit operating system
 - Microsoft Windows Server 2008 requires "csvde.exe" feature to be installed on the server to query Active Directory for mailbox information
 - To install "csvde.exe" feature on Windows Server 2008 follow these steps:
 1. Open Server Manager
 2. Go to Features->Add Feature
 3. Remote Server Administration Tools
 4. Role Administration Tools
 5. Select "Active Directory Lightweight Directory Service Tools"
-

Notes on Outlook OWA Proxy Enabler Installation

Prior to configuring Web Access for Exchange 2007 Mailbox/Public Folder Archiver, WebProxy Agent for Exchange, or OWA Proxy Enabler, ensure that the Client Access Role has been configured on the Exchange Server.

Notes on Outlook Add-In Client Installation

For Windows clients, JRE 1.6.0_06 is installed automatically with the Outlook Add-In software if it is not already installed.

For Macintosh clients, JRE 1.5.x must be installed manually prior to installing the Outlook Add-In software.

.NET Framework is needed to support RPC over HTTP connection mode, as well as support for the Exchange Offline Mining Tool. It is not automatically installed by the MSI package and must be manually installed.

Update 331320 must be installed on the client in order to use RPC over HTTP. Contact Microsoft Product Support Services and refer to KB 331320 to obtain this patch

The Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is not automatically installed for MSI installs. However, the required subset of files from Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package are provided as part of the software and therefore, manual installation is not required.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - File Archiver for NetWare Agent

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for NetWare Agent:

Operating System

NetWare 6.5 with Support Packs up to Support Pack 8

NetWare 6.5 Branch Office with Support Pack 5 (Not supported required along with the `resync replication` feature.)

Processor

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

50 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp directory resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Novell NetWare TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Novell Storage Management Service (SMDR.NLM) must be loaded.

The software must be installed on an NSS volume.

You must have some form of name resolution between your CommServe, NetWare Server, and MediaAgent to ensure proper operations. It is recommended that your NetWare server has DNS services configured.

The NetWare File System *iDataAgent* will be automatically installed during installation of the File Archiver for NetWare Agent, if the File System *iDataAgent* is not already installed. For System Requirements and install information specific to the File System *iDataAgent*, refer to [System Requirements - NetWare Server iDataAgents](#).


DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - File Archiver for Unix Agent

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for Unix Agent:

Operating System		Processor
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1	
HP-UX	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 32-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	PA RISC
	HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) 64-bit with OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch)	
	HP-UX 11.23 64-bit	
	HP-UX 11.31 64-bit	
	HP-UX 11.23 64-bit	Intel Itanium
	HP-UX 11.31 64-bit	
Linux	CentOS	
	CentOS 5.3 with kernel 2.6.18-128.el5	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian	
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2-686	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2-amd64	x64
	OES File System	
Novell OES2 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 10 SP2) 32-bit	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Novell OES2 Linux up to SP1 (SLES 10 SP2) 64-bit	x64	
 This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.		
Red Hat Enterprise Linux		
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required	
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)		

Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)

Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3) x64

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)

Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-55 (Update 5)

Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel-2.6.9-67 (Update 6)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8.el5

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53.el5 (Update 1)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)

SuSE Linux

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3) Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)

Suse Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.21-0.8

Suse Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.34 (Update 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.27.19-5

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5- x64
7.244 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.5-
7.308 (Patch Level 4)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel
2.6.27.19-5

SGI IRIX64

SGI IRIX64 6.5 with revision 7.4.2 runtime libraries
and the eoe.sw.dmi package installed.

SGI workstation with type IP30 system
board

Solaris

Solaris 8 64-bit with Service Packs 108434-09,
108435-09, and 109147-20

Solaris 8 32-bit and 64-bit VERITAS File System
with Service Packs 108434-09, 108435-09, and
109147-20

Solaris 9 4/04 64-bit

Solaris 9 64-bit with Service Packs 111711-02 and
111712-02

Solaris 10 64-bit

Solaris 10 6/06 64-bit

Sun Ultra2 or higher recommended

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

256 MB RAM or higher recommended total system memory

Hard Disk

250 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

3.5 KB per file of cache partition

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

On Solaris computers, the operating system must have been installed with at least the `user_level` software option selected.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content. <code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code>
<code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code> . Also, if required, add it to the following list of files. <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code> <code>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso --gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</code>

```

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libIndexing.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

/opt/<software installation
directory>/Base/libSnooper.so --
gen_context
(system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)

```

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#

```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```

[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>

```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

System Requirements

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - File Archiver for Windows Agent

The following requirements are for the File Archiver for Windows Agent:

Operating System

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Edition with Service Pack 1 or 2

Microsoft Windows XP Professional x64 Edition with Service Pack 1

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Small Business Server 2003 Premium 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 32-bit up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Web Server 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Storage Server 2003 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Enterprise 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Virtual Server 2005 on Microsoft Windows 2003 Enterprise 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Virtual Server 2005 R2 on Microsoft Windows 2003 R2 Enterprise 32-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise 64-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise x64 Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Windows Storage Server 2003 64-bit Edition up to Service Pack 2

Microsoft Virtual Server 2005 R2 on Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Enterprise x64 Edition up to Service Pack 2

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate 32-bit Edition

Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate x64 Edition

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Supported File Servers

The File Archiver for Windows Agent can perform data protection/recovery operations for data on the following file servers:

BlueArc File Server

BlueArc OS 4.1

BlueArc OS 4.2

BlueArc OS 5.1

BlueArc OS 5.2

BlueArc OS 6.0

BlueArc OS 6.1

BlueArc OS 6.5

NetApp File Server

ONTAP version 7.0

ONTAP version 7.1

ONTAP version 7.1.2.1

ONTAP version 7.2

ONTAP version 7.3

ONTAP version 8.0

ONTAP versions 7.0, 7.2, 7.3 and 8.0 are supported for FPolicy. For versions earlier than 7.0 and version 7.1, a Network File Share Instance type must be used.

- Each File Archiver for Windows agent can support multiple NetApp file servers, which have the same ONTAP version, whereas a separate File Archiver for Windows agent is required for each ONTAP version.

EMC Celerra File Server

DART OS 5.5

DART OS 5.6

Virtual Data Mover (VDM) on DART on 5.5 and 5.6 is supported.

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

File Archiver for Windows Agent

103 MB of hard disk space for software/ 198 MB recommended

77 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

File Share Archiver Client

40 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

24 MB of temp space required for install (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Special considerations apply if using the File Archiver for Windows Agent in an IPv6 environment. See the [File Archiver Considerations](#) in [Internet Protocols](#) for more information.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SharePoint Archiver Agent

The following requirements are for the SharePoint Archiver Agent:

Application

The Microsoft SharePoint Archiver Agent supports the following Microsoft SharePoint Server versions:

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 2.0 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SharePoint Portal 2003 Server up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services version 3.0 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SharePoint Server 2010

Operating System

The Microsoft SharePoint Archiver Agent are supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft SharePoint Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

* Special configuration considerations apply. See [Installing 32-bit Components on a Microsoft Windows x64 Platform](#) for more information.

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

103 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

System Requirements

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - ContinuousDataReplicator

System Requirements | [Snapshot Support](#)

The following requirements are for the ContinuousDataReplicator:

Operating System		Processor
AIX	AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
	AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 and runtime library xIC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher	
	AIX 6.1 64-bit	
Linux	CentOS	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
	CentOS 5.3 with kernel 2.6.18-128	
	Debian	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2-686	
	Debian 5.x with kernel 2.6.26-2-amd64	x64
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux	Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-34 (Update 3)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-42 (Update 4)	
	Red Hat Linux AS/ES 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)	
	Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update1)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)	
	Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)	

A compiled version of the CDR driver is supplied only for the listed versions and kernels. If you perform online updates of Linux, you may encounter a situation where the supplied CDR

driver will not load after a reboot because the kernel has been updated to a new version.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9- 42 (Update 4) x64

Red Hat Linux AS/ES 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-55 (Update 5)

Red Hat Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-67 (Update 6)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-78 (Update 7)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS 4.0 with kernel 2.6.9-89 (Update 8)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-8

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-53 (Update1)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-92 (Update 2)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-128 (Update 3)

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 Advanced Platform with kernel 2.6.18-164 (Update 4)

SuSE Linux

Intel Pentium or compatible minimum required

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel 2.6.5-7.191 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.21-0.8

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.34 (Update 2)

SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.54.5 (Patch Level 3)

SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5

A compiled version of the CDR driver is supplied only for the listed versions and kernels. If you perform online updates of Linux, you may encounter a situation where the supplied CDR

driver will not load after a reboot because the kernel has been updated to a new version.

	SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel 2.6.5-7.244 (Patch Level 3)	x64
	SuSE Linux 9.0 Enterprise Server Edition with kernel 2.6.5-7.308 (Patch Level 4)	
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.46-0.12 (Patch Level 1)	
	SuSE Linux 10 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.16.60-0.21 (Patch Level 2)	
	SuSE Linux 11 Enterprise Server with kernel 2.6.27.19-5	
Solaris	Solaris 9	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended
	Solaris 10.x (6/06 and higher)	
	Solaris 10.x (6/06 and higher)	x64
Windows	Special considerations apply to some of the supported Windows platforms, refer to the Notes on Windows Installations for more details.	All Windows-compatible processors supported
	Windows Server 2003	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 2	
	Windows Vista	
	Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions	
	Windows Server 2008	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*	
	Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*	
	*Core Editions not supported	

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

AIX and Linux

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2*RAM size

Windows

512 MB RAM minimum required, of which a minimum of 64 MB RAM is required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications for successful ContinuousDataReplicator operations; 1 GB RAM recommended

Hard Disk

CDR on Windows:

66 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

10 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

- 1 GB minimum of additional hard disk space on the source computer for replication log file growth; more is recommended
- 1 GB of additional hard disk space on the destination computer for replication log file growth for each source computer (e.g., if five source computers are configured to use the same destination computer, then 5 GB of additional hard drive space is required on the destination computer)

CDR on UNIX:

250 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

- 3 GB minimum of additional hard disk space on the source computer for replication log file growth; more is recommended. Maximum allowed is 80% of total space on the file system.

Refer to [Data Replication](#) for important considerations when allocating replication log file space.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The File System iDataAgent is not automatically installed during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. If you wish to install the File System iDataAgent, you must select the option to do so during installation of the ContinuousDataReplicator. For System Requirements specific to the File System iDataAgent, refer to [System Requirements - Microsoft Windows File System iDataAgent](#).

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can

<p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.te</p>	<p>give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name.</p> <p><version> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0.</p> <p>For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.</p> <pre>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</pre>
<p><directory>/<file_name>.fc</p> <p>where:</p> <p><directory> is /usr/share/selinux/devel</p> <p><file_name> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: backup_IDA.fc</p>	<p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check /var/log/messages. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre>/opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0)</pre>

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the /usr/share/selinux/devel directory.

```
[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to
tmp/backup_IDA.mod
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

Notes on Windows Installation

When installing ContinuousDataReplicator client on a Microsoft Windows x64 platform, you must install Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0.

Notes on Linux Installation

A compiled version of the CDR driver is supplied only for the listed versions and kernels. If you perform online updates of Linux, you may encounter a situation where the supplied CDR driver will not load after a reboot because the kernel has been updated to a new version.

If you are installing the software on a computer running Red Hat Linux 5 or above, the file system on the computer must be compiled as a kernel module.

For example: computers running Red Hat Linux 5 with the `ext2` file system will not support the ContinuousDataReplicator software, as the `ext2` file system is built into the kernel. Conversely, computers running Red Hat Linux 5 with the `ext3` file system compiled as a kernel module will support the ContinuousDataReplicator software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM Server

The following requirements are for the SRM Server.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Operating System

Windows Server 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

*Web Server Editions not supported

Windows Server 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core and Web Server Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

1 GB RAM minimum required; 2 GB RAM recommended

Hard Disk

In addition to CommServe requirements, the following space is required for SRM Server:

600 MB of local disk space for the SRM Server software.

600 MB of local disk space for the SRM database. (This is a prerequisite for installing and upgrading the SRM Server.)

1.8 GB of local disk space for the SRM database growth.

In time, you may need to provide additional space (several GB) to allow for growth in the SRM Server metadata. The size of the metadata depends on the number of computers, the data collection policies and database aging policies implemented in the SRM system.

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Enterprise Edition (with Service Pack 2) will be automatically installed while

installing the software. Later versions of the Service Pack, if available, are also supported. (* See Disclaimer below.)

In a clustered environment, Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Enterprise Edition with the appropriate service pack and Reporting Services with Service Pack 2 must be installed and clustered prior to installing a SRM Server. Also note that Reporting Services must be configured on all physical nodes in the cluster prior to installing the SRM server.

Microsoft SQL Reporting Services 2005 with Service Pack 2 will be automatically installed while installing the SRM Server software.

SRM Server is supported on Enterprise version and not on Express versions.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

On Windows Server 2003

Prior to installing SRM Server the following software components must also be installed on Windows Server 2003:

- .NetFramework 2.0 (2.0.50727)
- Asp.Net
- IIS

If necessary, you can install the .NET Framework from the following location in the Windows and NetWare disc:

```
\intel32\bin\dotnetframework\2.0
```

For Microsoft Windows Server 2003 platforms, .NET Framework 1.1 is built into the operating system and comes with ASP.NET. However, ASP.NET is not added as a component by default. You must add ASP.NET as a component prior to the SRM Server installation. If ASP.NET is not added as a component, the SRM Server installation will fail.

You can add ASP.NET as you would any other component by using the Control Panel | Add/Remove Programs | Add/Remove Windows Components utility with the ASP.NET option checked in the Application Server | Details dialog box.

Additionally, ensure that FrontPage 2002 Server Extensions is not checked in the Internet Information Services (IIS) | Details dialog box.

Notes on SRM Server Installation

The SRM Server cannot be installed on a domain controller.

For clustered environments, use an account with administrator privileges (i.e., a member of the Administrator local group of the computer or domain).

SQL Server Reporting Services for SRM Server on Windows 2008

To successfully install the Reporting Services on a Windows 2008 computer:

1. Ensure IIS settings are correct:
 - Enable appropriate roles. See [Configure IIS for Windows Server 2008](#).
 - Change default settings of Application Pools so that reports can be viewed properly. See [Unable to view reports on a Windows 2008 R2 computer](#).
 2. Verify User Access Control (UAC) settings. See [User Access Control in Windows 2008 and Viewing SRM Reports](#).
-

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to

System Requirements

correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM Exchange Agent

The following requirements are for the SRM Agent for Microsoft Exchange Server.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Application

The Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgent support the following Microsoft Exchange Server versions:

Microsoft Exchange 2000 Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2003 Server up to the latest service pack

Microsoft Exchange 2007 Server up to the latest service pack

Operating System

The Microsoft Exchange Server iDataAgents are supported on the following operating systems as supported by the Microsoft Exchange Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

104 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

.NET Framework 2.0 is required for SRM Agent for Microsoft Exchange Server installations.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM NetWare Proxy Agent

The SRM NetWare Proxy Agent for NetWare File System is installed on a computer that can access the NetWare Server for which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM NetWare Proxy Agent for NetWare File System.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Proxy Agent

Novell Client

Novell Client version 4.91 SP4 and SP5 with the following operating system versions:

- Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit Editions
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Novell Operating Systems

Data can be collected from a NetWare server with the following Operating System:

- NetWare 6.5 with Support Pack 6, 7 and 8
- Novell OES2 Linux up to SP2 (SLES 10 SP3) 32-bit and 64-bit

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

104 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

30 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

DISCLAIMER

System Requirements

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM NAS Agent

The SRM NAS Agent software is installed on a computer (Proxy Agent) that can access the file server from which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM NAS Agent for Network Attached Storage.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Proxy Agent

Operating System

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

File Server

Data can be collected from file servers with the following Operating Systems:

- NetApp ONTAP versions 6.5.7 through 8.0.x
- Celerra DART versions 5.5 through 5.6

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

107 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

30 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

Network connectivity between the proxy Agent and the NAS file servers that are configured as clients.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM Oracle Agent

The SRM Oracle Agent can be installed on a computer that can access the Oracle database for which you wish to perform data collection. The following requirements are for the SRM Oracle Agent.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Proxy Agent

The Proxy Agent can be installed on a computer with the following operating systems:

Operating System

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 x64 Editions*

*Core and R2 Editions not supported

Oracle Versions

Data can be collected from the following Oracle databases installed on any operating system supported by the respective database(s):

- Oracle 9.2.x Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
 - Oracle 9.2.x RAC Database 32-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
 - Oracle 10g (10.1.x) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
 - Oracle 10g (10.1.x) RAC Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
 - Oracle 10g R2 (10.2.x) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
 - Oracle 11g (11.1.0.6.0) Database 32-bit and 64-bit (Enterprise or Standard Edition)
-

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

124 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

50 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

84 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM SharePoint Agent

The following requirements are for the SRM SharePoint Agent for SharePoint.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Application/Operating System

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services 2.0 with Service Pack 2 on:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft SharePoint Portal Server 2003 32-bit with Service Pack 2 on:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows SharePoint Services 3.0 on:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Microsoft Office SharePoint Server 2007 on:

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions*

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

106 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the temp folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Software Development Kit (SDK) must be installed.

Notes on SRM SharePoint Installation

If V2 and V3 are installed on separate instances on the same computer, only V3 will be probed.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM SQL Agent

The following requirements are for the SRM SQL Agent for Microsoft SQL Server.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Application

The SRM SQL Agent is supported on the following Microsoft SQL Server versions:

Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Standard and Enterprise 32-bit Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SQL Server 2005 Standard and Enterprise 32-bit and x64 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Microsoft SQL Server 2008 Standard and Enterprise 32-bit and x64 Editions up to the latest Service Pack

Operating System

The SRM SQL Agent is supported on the following operating systems as supported by Microsoft SQL Server.

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit and x64 Editions* with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions*

*Core Editions not supported

SRM SQL Agent does not allow installing 32-bit components of Microsoft SQL Server on x64 platforms.

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

512 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

107 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

.NET Framework 2.0 is automatically installed. Note that .NET Framework 2.0 can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM UNIX File System Agent

The following requirements are for the SRM UNIX File System Agent for UNIX file system.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Operating System	Processor
AIX AIX 5.2 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 10 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 5.3 32-bit and 64-bit with technology level 6 (or higher) and runtime library xLC.rte 8.0.0.0 or higher AIX 6.1 64-bit	Power PC (Includes IBM System p)
HP-UX HP-UX 11i v1 (11.11) with a minimum of OS patch PHCO29328 (contact Hewlett Packard to obtain the patch) HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23)	PA-RISC
HP-UX 11i v2 (11.23) HP-UX 11i v3 (11.31)	Intel Itanium
Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.x with glibc 2.3.x Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.x with glibc 2.3.x	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
Red Hat Enterprise Linux Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x with glibc 2.5.x	Intel Pentium, x64 or compatible processors
SuSE Linux SuSE Linux 9.x with glibc 2.3.x SuSE Linux 10.x with glibc 2.4.x	Intel Pentium, Intel Itanium, x64 or compatible processors
Solaris Solaris 8 with a minimum of Service Packs 108528-13 Solaris 9 Solaris 10.x	Sun Sparc5 or higher recommended

Memory

16 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Swap space = 2 x RAM size

Hard Disk

220 MB minimum of hard disk space for software

100 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

20 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

The operating system must have been installed with at least the `user level software` option selected.

The SRM UNIX File System Agent for UNIX File System support the file system types listed in the following table:

Supported File System(s)	SRM UNIX File System Agent name
Extent 2 File System (ext2)	Linux
Extent 3 File System (ext3)	Linux
Hierarchical File System (HFS)	HP-UX
Journal File System (JFS)	AIX
Journal File System 2 (JFS2)	AIX
Reiser File System (reiserfs)	Linux
Unix File System (UFS)	All except AIX
VERITAS File System (VxFS)	HP-UX, Solaris
Virtual File Allocation Table (VFAT)	Linux
'X' File System (XFS)	Linux
Zettabyte File System (ZFS)	Solaris

If you have SELinux enabled on the client computer, create the SELinux policy module as a root user before performing a backup. The SELinux Development package must be installed on the client.

To create SELinux policy module, perform the following steps as user "root":

1. Create the following files in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory:

File Name	Content of the file
<code><directory>/<file_name>.te</code> where: <code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code> <code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file. For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.te</code>	The content of the file should be as follows: <code>policy_module(<name>,<version>)</code> <code>#####</code> where: <code><name></code> is the name of the policy module. You can give any unique name to the policy module, such as a process or application name. <code><version></code> is the version of the policy module. It can be any number, such as 1.0.0. For Example: While creating a policy module for the backup_IDA application, you can use the following content.

<p><code><directory>/<file_name>.fc</code></p> <p>where:</p> <p><code><directory></code> is <code>/usr/share/selinux/devel</code></p> <p><code><file_name></code> is the name of the Unix file, created to save the policy module statement. It is a good idea to use the same name for policy module and the file.</p> <p>For example: When you are creating a policy module for backup_IDA application, you can use the following file name: <code>backup_IDA.fc</code></p>	<p><code>policy_module(backup_IDA,1.0.0)</code></p> <p>The content of the file should be as follows:</p> <p>Note that the following list of files is not exhaustive. If the process fails to launch, check <code>/var/log/messages</code>. Also, if required, add it to the following list of files.</p> <pre> /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCTreeWrapper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libCVMAGuiImplgso -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2locale.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2osse.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDb2Sbt.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libdb2trcapi.so.1 -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libDrDatabase.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libIndexing.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) /opt/<software installation directory>/Base/libSnooper.so -- gen_context (system_u:object_r:texrel_shlib_t,s0) </pre>
---	--

2. Create the policy file from command line. Use the following command. Ensure that you give the following commands in the `/usr/share/selinux/devel` directory.

```

[root]# make backup_IDA.pp
Compiling targeted backup_IDA module
/usr/bin/checkmodule: loading policy configuration from tmp/backup_IDA.tmp
/usr/bin/checkmodule: policy configuration loaded
/usr/bin/checkmodule: writing binary representation (version 6) to

```

```
tmp/backup_IDA.mod  
Creating targeted backup_IDA.pp policy package  
rm tmp/backup_IDA.mod tmp/backup_IDA.mod.fc  
[root]# semodule -i backup_IDA.pp  
[root]#
```

3. Execute the policy module. Use the following command:

```
[root]# restorecon -R /opt/<software installation directory>
```

SELinux is now configured to work with this application.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as “supported” in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - SRM Windows File System Agent

The following requirements are for the SRM Windows File System Agent for Microsoft Windows File System.



This feature/product/platform requires a special software installation package. Contact your software provider to obtain this package.

Operating System

Windows XP

Microsoft Windows XP Professional 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows 2003

Microsoft Windows Server 2003 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions with a minimum of Service Pack 1

Windows Vista

Microsoft Windows Vista 32-bit and x64 Editions

Windows 2008

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit, 64-bit and x64 Editions

Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2 Editions

Windows 7

Microsoft Windows 7 32-bit and x64 Editions

Cluster Support

See [Clustering - Support](#)

Processor

All Windows-compatible processors supported

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Hard Disk

105 MB minimum of hard disk space for software/ 148 MB recommended

30 MB of additional hard disk space for log file growth

77 MB of temp space required for install or upgrade (where the `temp` folder resides)

Peripherals

DVD-ROM drive

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

TCP/IP Services configured on the computer.

These requirements are in addition to the disk requirements set for the operating system.

Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package is automatically installed. Note that Visual C++ 2008 Redistributable Package can co-exist with other versions of this software.

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

System Requirements - Books Online

The following requirements are for Books Online:

Operating System

Books Online is supported on any operating system running a supported Java-enabled web browser

Supported Web Browsers

Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0

Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0

Display

It is recommended that the screen resolution be set to 1024 by 768 pixels for viewing Books Online

Memory

32 MB RAM minimum required beyond the requirements of the operating system and running applications

Peripherals

Network Interface Card

Miscellaneous

Adobe® Acrobat® Reader 5.0 (or higher) for viewing the PDF files

You must have JavaScript enabled in your browser to navigate and view the contents of Books Online

Downloaded Versions of Books Online

The following additional requirements apply for downloaded versions of Books Online:

- At least 300 MB of hard disk space for extracted Books Online files

See [Download Books Online](#) for more information

DISCLAIMER

Minor revisions and/or service packs that are released by application and operating system vendors may, in some cases, affect the working of our software. Although we may list such revisions and/or service packs as "supported" in our System Requirements, changes to the behavior of our software resulting from an application or operating system revision/service pack may be beyond our control. However, we will make every effort to correct such disruption as quickly as possible. When in doubt, please contact your software provider to ensure support for a specific application or operating system.

Additional considerations regarding minimum requirements and End of Life policies from application and operating system vendors are also applicable.

